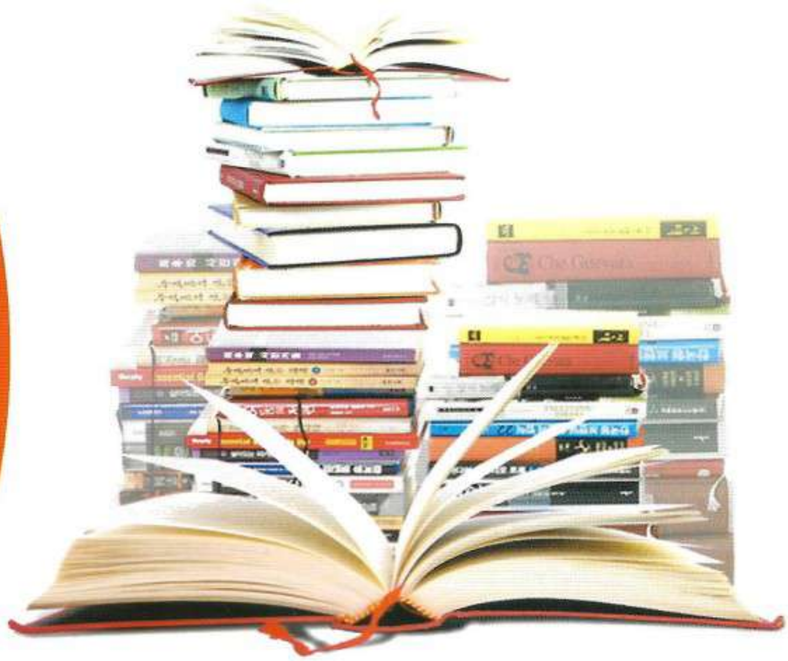
Giants' Grammar

قواعد العمـــالقة



For Secondary Stage
& All English Learners

للمرحلة الثانوية / جميع الصفوف
ولكل دارسي اللغة الإنجليزية

كتـــاب يشمل
جميع قواعـــــد
اللغة الانجليزيـــة
بشكــــل مبسط

Part one الجزء الأول

The letter الحرف → The word الكلمة → The phrase العبارة → The clause شبه الجملة → The sentence الجملة

1 الحرف The letter

تتكون حروف الهجاء الإنجليزية من (26 حرفاً :

منها
(21) حرفاً ساكن consonants
و(5) احرف متحركة vowels وهم (a, e, i, o, u)

أشكال الحرف

1) Capital letters الحروف الكبيرة

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z
a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z

2) Small letters الحروف الصغيرة

للاحظ أن اللغة الانجليزية تتكون من 26 حرفاً و تحتوي على 48 صوتاً (sound) وذلك بسبب أن بعض الحروف لها أكثر من صوت على سبيل المثال:

The letter (C)

❶ حرف الـ (c) ينطق كحرف (الكاف) إذا أتى بعده أى حرف ساكن ماعدا (h - y) أو أى حرف متحرك ماعدا (i - e)

close	cat	cow	cut	crazy	comic

❷ حرف الـ (c) ينطق كحرف (س) إذا جاء بعده حرف (e, i, y)

cell	circle	cinema	cycle	police	policy

❸ حرف الـ (c) ينطق كحرف (ش) إذا أتى بعده (io, ie, ia)

social	conscientious	efficient	especial	financial

❹ حرف الـ (c) إذا تبع بحرف (h) فستكون هناك ثلاث اصوات ينطق حرف (تش)

cheese	chair	teacher	chest	chief	choice

❺ وينطق حرف (ك)

school	chemist	headache	stomach	choral	chorus

❻ وينطق حرف (ش)

Machine	chassis	champagne

The letter (S)

❶ حرف الـ (S) ينطق كحرف (س) إذا أتى بعده أى حرف ساكن أو متحرك ماعدا (h - i - u)

sun	sea	steam	sound	spin	safe

❷ حرف الـ (S) ينطق كحرف (ش) إذا جاء بعده حرف (h) فى بعض الكلمات مثل:

she	short	show	shoes	shelf	should

❸ حرف الـ (S) ينطق كحرف (ذ) إذا جاء قبله حرف (i - u) فى بعض الكلمات مثل:

is	use	visit	advise	refuse	revise

The letter (g)

❶ حرف الـ (g) ينطق كحرف (الجيم) إذا أتى بعده أى حرف ماعدا (e, i, y)

go	gap	glad	game	glass	grab

❷ حرف الـ (g) ينطق كحرف (الجيم المعطشة) إذا جاء بعده حرف (e, i, y)

giant	gym	geography	gem	gymnastics	general

فيما عدا بعض الكلمات التي تنطق كحرف (الجيم) إذا جاء بعده (e, i, y)

get	girl	gift	give	gear	geese

❸ حرف الـ (gh) ينطق كحرف (الجيم) أو كحرف (الفاء) أو لا تنطق (صامت)

ghost	light	fight	bought	enough	laugh

The letter (t)

❶ حرف الـ (t) ينطق كحرف (التاء) إذا أتى بعده أى حرف ساكن أو متحرك ماعدا (h) مثل

take	top	table	tent	tin	tree

❷ حرف الـ (t) ينطق كحرف (ث) إذا جاء بعده حرف (h) فى بعض الكلمات مثل

cloth	bath	three	throw	think	thank

❸ حرف الـ (t) ينطق كحرف (ذ) إذا جاء بعده حرف (h) فى بعض الكلمات مثل

this	that	the	father	than	bother

❹ حرف الـ (t) ينطق كحرف (تش) إذا أتى بعده (u) فى بعض الكلمات مثل

future	culture	lecture	agriculture	nature	factual

❺ حرف الـ (t) ينطق كحرف (تش) إذا أتى بعده (ion) فى بعض الكلمات مثل

information	action	fiction	location	position	national

Silent letters

وهي الحروف التي تكتب ولا تنطق:

Letter (b)	قبله حرف (m) أو بعد حرف (t)	فى بعض الكلمات إذا جاء	lamb	comb	climb	debt
Letter (k)	بعده حرف (n)		knife	know	knight	knee
Letter (l)	بعده حرف (k - d - f)		talk	should	could	half
Letter (n)	قبله حرف (m)		autumn	Hymnbook	كتاب الترانيم	
Letter (p)	بعده حرف (s) فى أول الجملة		pseudo	psychology	psychologist	
Letter (s)	بعده حرف (l)		aisle	island	islander	
Letter (t)	قبله حرف (s)		castle	wrestle	fasten	listen
Letter (h)	بعده حرف (o)		hour	honest	honour	
	قبله حرف (w)		what	why	where	when
	قبله حرف (g)		light	fight	night	might
Letter (w)	بعده حرف (r)		write	wrestling	wrong	wrist
	بعده حرفى (ho)		who	whose	whoop	whole

لا يمكننا وضع قواعد ثابتة لنطق الحروف ولكن يمكننا وضع بعض الثوابت فى النطق مع وجود شواذ تساعدنا فى النطق.

أفضل طريقة لمعرفة الاصوات و كيفية النطق الصحيح هي الممارسة عن طريق التدرب علي نطق الكلمات.

2 الكلمة The word

الكلمة: مجموعة من الحروف معاً تعطي معني ويمكن تقسيم الكلمة إلى 7 اجزاء.

Parts of Speech أقسام الكلام

Noun	اسم
Pronoun	ضمير
Verb	فعل
Adjective	صفة
Adverb	حال
Article	اداة
Preposition	حرف جر

1) Noun اسم

اللسم هو كلمة تستخدم للتسمية ويشمل اسم انسان أو حيوان أو مكان أو جماد أو مجرد:

Person	شخص	Ali - Aya - man - woman - boy - girl - worker - vet ... etc.
Place	مكان	Cairo - school - home - park - Egypt - city.........etc.
Animal	حيوان	monkey - bird - lion - cat - tiger - bee - insect..... etc.
Thing	شيء	car - bag -plant - tree - tool- shirt - pen - office .... etc.
Abstract	معنوي	freedom - independence - evil - love - beauty....etc.

ويمكن تقسيم اللسم بشكل عام إلى:

The proper noun	الاسم العلم	Ali - Aya - Egypt - Africa - Cairo..... etc. اسم شخص أو مكان أو حدث
The common noun	الاسم العام	animal - bird - book - car - child - man - pen - river - street - tree - town ..... etc. هو اسم عام لكل
The Material noun	الاسم المادي	glass - gold - iron - milk - salt - water...etc. المادة الخام
The collective noun	الاسم الدال على الجمع	army - audience - crew - group - herd - people - police - team... etc. هو اسم لمجموعة من الأشخاص أو الأشياء
The Abstract noun	الاسم المجرد	action - beauty - courage - death - fear - grief - happiness - life - love..... etc. يشير إلى شيء معنوي وليس مادي

ويمكن تقسيم اللسم من حيث الجنس (The Gender) إلى أربعة أقسام:

Masculine Gender	الاسم للذكور	man - boy - brother - uncle - son - father - husband - actor - hero - waiter - king ...etc.
Feminine Gender	الاسم للإناث	woman - girl - sister - aunt - daughter - mother wife - actress - heroine - waitress- queen..etc.
Common Gender	الاسم المشترك	bird - child - cousin - enemy - friend - parent - teacher - person - cat - doctor... etc.
Neuter Gender	الاسم المحايد للجماد	book - box - glass - house - pen - stone - table - car chair ...etc.

ويمكن تقسيم اللسم من حيث الشكل (The Form) إلى ثلاثة أقسام:

The simple noun	الاسم البسيط	board - chair - knife - pen - man - ball - box... etc.
The compound noun	الاسم المركب	armchair - blackboard - railway - rainbow ...
The derivative noun	الاسم المشتق	sailor- friendship - happiness - childhood - building singer. اسم المشتق من فعل أو صفة أو اسم أخر بإضافة مقطع إلى أخره

ويمكن تقسيم الاسم من حيث العدد (Countable and Uncountable) إلى قسمين:

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة
Countable and Uncountable Nouns

Countable Nouns الأســـاء المعـدودة

❶ الأسماء التي تعد يكون لها مفرد ويمكن أن يأتي قبلهم واحدة من (a - an - one - this - that - each - every...)

ويأتي بعدها فعل مفرد (is - was - has - v+s.....)

a bag	this car	each boy	one story	is was has v+s
a book	this table	each student	one pen	
an apple	that bus	every hero	one cup	
an egg	that watch	every box	one flat	

❷ الأسماء التي تعد يكون لها جمع بإضافة (s / es / ies) إلى أخرها.

ويمكن أن يأتي قبلهم (these - those - many - few - a lot of - several - some - any....)

ويأتي بعدها فعل جمع (are - were - have - infinitive.....)

bags	these cars	many boys	four stories	are were have infinitive
books	these tables	few students	two pens	
apples	those buses	any heroes	a lot of cups	
eggs	those watches	some boxes	lots of flats	

Important Notes

❶ تجمع معظم الأسماء بإضافة (s)

bag ➲ bags	pen ➲ pens	train ➲ trains
boy ➲ boys	flat ➲ flats	plane ➲ planes

❷ الأسماء التي تنتهي بـ (o قبلها حرف ساكن) / s / ch / sh / x / z تأخذ (es):

box ➲ boxes	witch ➲ witches	hero ➲ heroes
glass ➲ glasses	wish ➲ wishes	volcano ➲ volcanoes

❸ الأسماء التي تنتهي بـ (y قبلها حرف ساكن) تأخذ (ies) بدون (y) أما إذا كانت (y قبلها حرف متحرك) تأخذ (s) بعد (y):

factory ➲ factories	family ➲ families	party ➲ parties
monkey ➲ monkeys	way ➲ ways	play ➲ plays

❹ إذا انتهي الاسم بـ(f / fe) البعض يضاف له ves مع حذف (f / fe) البعض يضاف له (s) بعد (f / fe)

wolf ➲ wolves	knife ➲ knives	wife ➲ wives
belief ➲ beliefs	roof ➲ roofs	chief ➲ chiefs

❺ الملكية مع الاسماء (لاحظ الفرق ما بين 's و s')

's + اسم مفرد / اسم جمع لا ينتهي بـ s	Ali's car	children's house	men's clothes
اسم جمع ينتهى بـ s يضاف له ' فقط	boys' house	birds' wings	ladies' songs

Wise Saying

All great discoveries are made by mistake.

كل المخترعات العظيمة إكتشفت بالخطأ

❻ الأسماء التي تعد قد يكون لها جمع غير منتظم مثل:

Singular مفرد			Plural جمع	
man	رجل	➲	men	رجال
woman	امرأة	➲	women	نساء
child	طفل	➲	children	أطفال
tooth	سنه	➲	teeth	أسنان
foot	قدم	➲	feet	أقدام
ox	ثور	➲	oxen	ثيران
mouse	فأر	➲	mice	فئران
basis	أساس	➲	bases	أسس
bacterium	بكتريا	➲	bacteria	بكتريا
oasis	واحة	➲	oases	واحات
datum	معلومة	➲	data	معلومات
crisis	أزمة	➲	crises	أزمات
phenomenon	ظاهرة	➲	phenomena	ظواهر
goose	إوزة	➲	geese	أوز

❼ هناك أسماء دائما فى صيغة الجمع:

people	الناس	scissors	مقص	jeans	**بنطلون جينز**
police	الشرطة	stairs	السلم	shorts	**بنطلون قصير**
clothes	ملابس	remains	بقايا	trousers	**بنطلون**
glasses	نظارة	public	العامة / الجمهور	pliers	**زردية (بنسة)**
youth	الشباب	cattle	ماشية	goods	**بضائع**

❽ بعض الاسماء تكون مفرد أو جمع حسب المعنى المستخدم:

Singular مفرد			Plural جمع	
the people	الشعب (مفرد / جمع)	➲	people	الناس (جمع)
means	وسيلة	➲	means	وسائل
series	سلسلة	➲	series	سلاسل
species	فصيلة	➲	species	فصائل
craft	ناقلة	➲	craft	ناقلات
fish	سمكة	➲	fish	سمك
deer	غزال	➲	deer	غزلان
sheep	خروف	➲	sheep	غنم
mathematics	علم الرياضيات	➲	mathematics	حسابات
statistics	علم الإحصاء	➲	statistics	الإحصاءات

✓ Statistics **show** that women live longer than men.

✓ Statistics **is** an easy subject.

✓ On average, people who **don't** smoke **are** healthier than people who do.

❾ بعض الاسماء قد تنتهي بـ (s) ولكنها مفرد :

classics	دراسة اليونانية والرومانية	genetics	علم الوراثة	economics	**علم الاقتصاد**
politics	علم السياسة	statistics	علم الإحصاء	gymnastics	**ألعاب الجمباز**
physics	الفيزياء	athletics	ألعاب القوي	linguistics	**علم اللغويات**
mathematics	الرياضيات	electronics	الالكترونيات	mechanics	**علم الميكانيكا**

✓ Physics **is** a hard subject. ✓ Athletics **is** my favourite sport.

✓ Economics **helps** us to run any economic problem.

⑩ لاحظ الأسماء الكلية تعامل جمع (إذا أشير الى عناصرها كأجزاء متفرقة) وتعامل مفرد (إذا أشير إلى عناصرها كجزء واحد):

the public	العامة	class	الفصل	government	الحكومة
people	الشعب	school	المدرسة	gang	عصابة
group	مجموعة	faculty	الكلية	cast	فريق التمثيل
team	فريق	navy	الأسطول	band	فرقة موسيقية
family	عائلة	army	الجيش	staff	هيئة عاملين
crew	طاقم سفينة أو طائرة	population	السكان	Herd (pack-flock)	قطيع حيوانات

✓ The Egyptian team **is** playing well.

✓ All team **are** leaving the pitch.

⑪ لاحظ استخدام ما يلي مع الاسماء المعدودة الجمع:

(some - any - a lot of - lots of - many - few - a few - how many) + اسم يعد جمع

✓ **My friends** are coming to stay at the weekend.

✓ We didn't take **many pictures.**

⑫ لاحظ استخدام the قبل صفة تتحول الصفة إلى اسم جمع وتساوي فى المعني (people + الصفة):

the poor الفقراء / the rich الأغنياء / the good الطيبين / the blind فاقدي البصر....

✓ **The rich** are to help **the poor** (**poor people**) in this time.

Uncountable Nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

- الأسماء التي لا تعد اسماء ليس لها جمع ولا يأتي قبلهم **(a - an- one - these - those)**
- ويأتي بعدها فعل مفرد **(is - was - has - v + s)**

important uncountable nouns	اسماء مهمة لا تعد				
information	معلومات	music	موسيقى	traffic	مرور
news	اخبار	equipment	المعدات	electricity	كهرباء
furniture	اثاث	cloth	قماش	jewellery	مجوهرات
advice	نصيحة	baggage	حقائب	rubbish	قمامة
money	مال	luggage	أمتعة	work	عمل
bread	خبز	travel	السفر	hair	شعر
time	وقت	clothing	الملبس	machinery	ألآت

- ويمكننا تقسيم الاسماء التي لا تعد كما يلي:

1. Liquids	**السوائل**	▸ milk - water - juice - tea - coffee - oil ... etc.
2. Materials	**الخامات**	▸ gold - wood - coffee - tea - paper - iron - glass - stone - sugar...... etc.
3. Gases	**الغازات**	▸ oxygen - hydrogen - carbon dioxide ...etc.
4. School subjects	**المواد الدراسية**	▸ history - physics - chemistry - biology - geography - psychology - mathematics.... etc.
5. Meals	**الوجبات**	▸ breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper
6. Languages	**اللغات**	▸ Arabic - English - French - German ... etc.
7. Sports	**الرياضات**	▸ tennis - football - gymnastics - volleyball - squash - hockey swimming - athletics .. etc.
8. activities	**الأنشطة**	▸ studying - reading - writing - shopping .. etc.
9. Abstract nouns	**الأسماء المجردة**	▸ freedom - advice - luck - honesty - hope - beauty - help - love - experience - confidence - courage - patience - peace - poverty - knowledge .... etc.
10. Natural phenomena	**الظواهر الطبيعية**	▸ drought - lightning - heat - snow - thunder - light - rain ...... etc.

- ✓ Most furniture **is** made of wood.
- ✓ I'm sorry but my patience **is** wearing thin.
- ✓ English **is** spoken in many countries.
- ✓ **This** coffee **is** smooth and rich.
- ✓ The only piece of furniture he has **is** a bed.
- ✓ The water in the lake **is** so clear.
- ✓ **This** oil**'s** a bit old, I'm afraid.
- ✓ Money **is** the root of all evil.
- ✓ Your luggage **is** very heavy.
- ✓ **This** bread **is** fresh.
- ✓ **This** information **is** very useful.
- ✓ My advice for you **is** to buy a new car.

Quantifiers تعبيرات الكمية والعدد

a lot of - many - much - a few - few - a little - little

a lot of =lots of	تأتي قبل اسم يعد جمع أو اسم لا يعد ويفضل استخدامهما فى الجملة الخبرية المثبتة. ▸ I have got **a lot of** friends. ➢ I have got **a lot of** money.
many	تأتي قبل اسم يعد جمع ويفضل استخدامها فى النفى واللاستفهام. ▸ I haven't got **many** friends. ➢ Have you got **many** friends?
much	تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد ويفضل استخدامها فى النفى واللاستفهام. ▸ I haven't got **much** money. ➢ Have you got **much** money?
a few	تأتي قبل اسم يعد جمع وتشير إلى عدد قليل ولكن يكفي. ▸ I have **a few** experiences. (enough)
few	تأتي قبل اسم يعد جمع وتشير إلى عدد قليل ولا يكفى (تنفي الجملة لذا لا تأتي فى الجملة المنفية). ▸ I have **few** experiences. (not enough)
a little	تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة ولكن تكفى. ▸ I have **a little** money. (enough)
little	تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة ولا يكفى (تنفى الجملة لذا لا تأتي فى الجملة المنفية). ▸ I have **little** money. (not enough)

لاحظ: يفضل استخدام (**many - much**) فى النفى والاستفهام ولكن يمكن استخدامهم فى الجملة المثبتة إذا جاء قبلها (**so - too - as**) أو إذا أتوا قبل الفاعل:

- ✓ He has **so much** money.
- ✓ **Many people** suffer from diabetes.
- ✓ I have faced **too many** problems recently.

Some - any

some	تأتي قبل اسم يعد جمع أو اسم لا يعد فى جملة خبرية مثبتة وفى سؤالى العرض والطلب. ▸ I found **some** good **stories**. اسم يعد ▸ I drank **some water**. اسم لا يعد ▸ **Would** you like **some** tea? عرض ▸ Can I have **some** of these oranges? طلب
any	تأتى قبل اسم يعد (مفرد أو جمع) أو اسم لا يعد فى جملة استفهامية أو منفية. ▸ I don't want **any** problems. اسم يعد ▸ I didn't drink **any** juice. اسم لا يعد ▸ Do you have **any** experience? سؤال تأتي مع الكلمات الدالة على النفى مثل : **hardly - scarcely - seldom - never - without - refuse - too .. to** ▸ He **never** had **any** luck. = he had **no** luck. ▸ We **hardly** had **any** money.

Important Notes

❶ يمكننا تلخيص تعبيرات الكمية وتعبيرات العدد فى الجدول التالى:

يعد ولا يعد	لا يعد (يعامل مفرد)	يعد (جمع)
a lot of	much (plenty of)	many (several)
lots of	Little	few
some	a little	a few
any	How much	How many

❷ لاحظ استخدام ما يلي مع الاسماء الغير معدودة:

(some - any - a lot of - lots of - much - little - a little - how much) + اسم لا يعد

- ✓ We didn't do **much shopping**.
- ✓ We listened to **some music**.
- ✓ I have **a little work** to do.
- ✓ Did you buy **any** apple **juice**?

❸ لاحظ استخدام (a - an) مع بعض الأسماء التي لا تعد إذا سبقتها صفة:

- ✓ We had **a wonderful lunch** at a restaurant yesterday.
- ✓ Ali had lost his job, and it was **a difficult time** for him.

❹ بعض الأسماء يمكن أن تعد أو لا تعد حسب المعنى مثل:

الاسم	المعني	تعد أو لا تعد	مثال
a paper / paper**s**	جريدة / جرائد	يعد	▶ I'm going to buy **a paper**.
paper	ورق الكتابة	لا يعد	▶ I'd like some writing **paper**.
an orange	برتقال فاكهة	يعد	▶ There are **two oranges** on the table.
orange	اللون البرتقالي	لا يعد	▶ I don't like **orange**. I prefer red.
an iron	مكواة	يعد	▶ She bought **an iron** yesterday.
iron	الحديد	لا يعد	▶ This table is made of **iron**.
a chicken	دجاجة	يعد	▶ I'd like to buy **a chicken**.
chicken	لحم الدجاج	لا يعد	▶ Do you like **chicken**?
a company	شركة	يعد	▶ The law obliges **companies** to pay decent wages.
company	صحبة	لا يعد	▶ You should be in good **company**.
a time / time**s**	مرة / مرات	يعد	▶ He went to London **three times**.
time	الوقت	لا يعد	▶ Don't hurry. There's plenty of **time**.
a hair / hair**s**	شعرة / شعر	يعد	▶ I see **two hairs** on your jacket.
hair	شعر (قص)	لا يعد	▶ My **hair** is short.
a school	مدرسة	يعد	▶ The government built **a school** in our village.
school	دراسة	لا يعد	▶ My brother started **school** at the age of 6.
a coffee	فنجان من القهوة	يعد	▶ Could I have **two coffees**? (**cups of coffee**)
coffee	قهوة (مشروب)	لا يعد	▶ Have you got any **coffee**?
a tea	كوب شاي	يعد	▶ Could I have two cups of coffee and **a tea**, please?
tea	شاى (مشروب)	لا يعد	▶ India grows **tea** for export.
an experience	تجربة بالحياة	يعد	▶ Travelling is **an experience** you will never forget.
experience	خبرة	لا يعد	▶ This job needs **experience**.
a light	مصباح كهربي	يعد	▶ We need **two lights** in this room.
light	الضوء	لا يعد	▶ The sun gives us **light**.
a cold	نزلة برد	يعد	▶ I've got **a** bad **cold**.
cold	البرد عموما	لا يعد	▶ Don't go out in the **cold** without a coat.
a glass	كوب زجاجي	يعد	▶ Would you like **a glass** of water?

الاسم	المعنى	تعد أو لا تعد	مثال
glass	زجاج	لا يعد	▸ The window's made of unbreakable **glass**.
a wood	غابة	يعد	▸ We went for a walk in the **woods** after lunch.
wood	خشب	لا يعد	▸ The house was built of **wood** but faced with brick.
a work	عمل فني /عمل أدبي/ مصنع	يعد	▸ We need to build **a** new **work** in this area.
work	العمل	لا يعد	▸ I've got so much **work** to do.

٥ يمكن تحويل الأسماء التي لا تعد إلى أسماء تعد كالآتي:

Kinds of Partitives أنــواع أدوات التجــزئة

1) General Partitives ألفاظ التجزئة العامة

باستخدام (a bit of - a piece of) كألفاظ تجزئة عامه وفى الجمع (bits of - pieces of)

✓ I'd like **a piece (a bit) of** cloth / bread / advice.
✓ I'd like two **pieces (bits) of** cloth / bread / advice.

2) Special Partitives ألفاظ التجزئة الخاصة

الكلمة	المعنى	تأتي مع
a cup of	فنجان من	▸ (tea / water / coffee..........)
a glass of	كوب من	▸ (juice / water / lemonade....)
a bottle of	زجاجة من	▸ (water / juice / milk / oil / ....)
a jar of	برطمان من	▸ (jam / honey.....)
a pair of	زوج من	▸ (boots / shoes / gloves / scissors / socks.....)
a loaf of	رغيف من	▸ bread
a bar of	قطعة من	▸ (chocolate / soap / ....)
a kilo of	كيلو من	▸ (sugar / pasta / flour / cheese.....)
a bag of	كيس من	▸ (pasta / flour / rice.....)
a tin of	علبة من	▸ (beans / sardine.......)
a slice of	شريحة من	▸ (bread / meat / cake....)
a packet of	لفه من	▸ (tea / coffee / biscuits ......)
a sheet of	فرخ من	▸ (paper....)
a tube of	انبوبة من	▸ (toothpaste / cream / blood .....)
a dish of	طبق من	▸ (chicken / meat / rice /.........)

وعند الجمع نجمع لفظ التجزئة ولا نجمع اسم المادة.

✓ **two sheets of** paper - **two pairs of** shoes - **two jars of** jam - **five cups of** tea - **two loaves of** bread - **two slices of** meat - **six bars of** chocolate.

للحظ الفعل بعد ألفاظ التجزئة:

يأتي بعده فعل مفرد		يأتي بعده فعل جمع	
a kilo of sugar	**is**	six kilos of sugar	**are**
a jar of jam	**was**	two jars of jam	**were**
a cup of tea	**has**	five cups of tea	**have**
a pair of shoes	**Inf. + s**	pairs of shoes	**Inf.**

❻ العبارات الدالة علي الكمية والمبالغ المالية والزمن والثمن والمسافة والوزن ودرجات الحرارة تعامل معاملة المفرد مع الفعل:

- ✓ Ten million pounds **is** a lot of money.
- ✓ Fifty litres of petrol **fills** my car.
- ✓ Five kilometers **is** a long way to walk.
- ✓ Two hours **is** a long time to wait.

❼ لاحظ الفعل مع:

a number of فعل جمع / the number of فعل مفرد

- ✓ **The number of** people in Egypt **is** in increase.
- ✓ **A number of** boys **have** left their books.

❽ لاحظ الفعل مع:

One of the + اسم جمع + فعل مفرد

- ✓ One of the players **was** injured.
- ✓ One of the spokes of my bicycle **was** broken.

❾ لاحظ ان:

no = not.....any

- ✓ I have **no** money. = I do**n't** have **any** money.
- ✓ There is **no** water. = There **isn't any** water.

❿ إذا جاء رابط أو تعبير بين الأسماء:

للحظ مع هذه التعبيرات الفعل غالباً ما يكون جمع

and / both

- ✓ **Both** Jana **and** Toka **are** from Beni Suef.
- ✓ I **and** my friend **have** established a new company.

للحظ مع هذه التعبيرات الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأول

as well as / besides / in addition to / along with

- ✓ I **as well as** he **study** hard.
- ✓ He **as well as** I **studies** hard.

للحظ مع هذه التعبيرات الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني

not only....but also..... / ...or... / either.......or...... / neither....nor......

- ✓ **Neither** Toka **nor** the students **are** here.
- ✓ **Neither** the students **nor** Toka **is** here.
- ✓ **Either** the library **or** bookstores **are** open.
- ✓ **Either** the bookstores **or** the library **is** open.

Wise Saying

"Never apologize for having high standards. People who really want to be in your life will rise up to meet them."

لا تعتذر أبداً عن تميُّزك عمن حولك . إن من يريدون حقاً أن يكونوا في حياتك سيرتفعون ليلتقوا بك

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) There are .... students in this school.
ⓐ many ⓑ much ⓒ a lot ⓓ lots

2) There .... several boys playing in the middle of the road.
ⓐ was ⓑ were ⓒ had ⓓ have

3) There are .... people here this morning.
ⓐ lot of ⓑ lots of ⓒ much ⓓ a lot

4) Is there .... tea in the cup?" "No, there isn't much."
ⓐ much ⓑ many ⓒ a lot ⓓ some

5) Is that your .... school?" "No, it isn't."
ⓐ children's ⓑ childrens's ⓒ childrens' ⓓ children

6) That green car on the corner is my ....
ⓐ father's the car ⓑ father's car ⓒ car's father ⓓ car's the father

7) Our cousin Henry has .... friends in town.
ⓐ much ⓑ a lot ⓒ any ⓓ many

8) Yes, ... houses here are very nice.
a. these ⓑ this ⓒ that ⓓ those

9) Is there .... book on the table?
ⓐ many ⓑ an ⓒ a ⓓ some

10) We've got .... interesting people here.
ⓐ any ⓑ some ⓒ much ⓓ an

11) Are you reading a book? Yes, I'm reading .... interesting book.
ⓐ an ⓑ any ⓒ some ⓓ a

12) There are .... cups of tea on the table.
ⓐ any ⓑ an ⓒ a ⓓ some

13) In this garden, there are .... very nice trees.
ⓐ much ⓑ ones ⓒ some ⓓ any

14) Are there any good papers in this country? Yes, there are ....
ⓐ any ⓑ some ⓒ much ⓓ an

15) This is .... interesting newspaper.
ⓐ any ⓑ an ⓒ a ⓓ some

Fill in gap:

16) Can I have .... milk in my coffee, please?
17) How .... information have you got from the story?
18) I have .... problem. Can you help me?
19) Many people .... reading this book every month.
20) The children .... very good yesterday.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21) The group has different opinions. [..............................]
22) Three or four man were sitting on chairs. [..............................]
23) How much coffees have you drunk today? [..............................]
24) One of the pages in the book are torn. [..............................]
25) The people in our group was watching the film. [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) We haven't got .... money to buy a new car yet.
ⓐ too few ⓑ too much ⓒ too many ⓓ some

2) Have they got .... flat?
ⓐ a lot of ⓑ an ⓒ a ⓓ some

3) There .... children in the park, weren't there?
ⓐ were a lot of ⓑ were a lot ⓒ was a lot ⓓ was lots of

4) There .... only a little coffee in the cup.
ⓐ was ⓑ were ⓒ had ⓓ have

5) These books here are the ....
ⓐ girls' books ⓑ girls's books ⓒ books' girls ⓓ books's girls

6) This is the .... , isn't it?
ⓐ boys' the ball ⓑ balls' boys ⓒ boys' ball ⓓ ball's boys

7) There's .... of coffee in the coffee machine.
ⓐ many ⓑ much ⓒ a lot of ⓓ lots

8) .... Which sentence is correct?
ⓐ The peoples are kind ⓑ People are kind ⓒ People is kind ⓓ The people kind

9) There were .... people at the meeting, only twenty.
ⓐ few ⓑ a little ⓒ any ⓓ little

10) .... people over there.
ⓐ There' s a lot of ⓑ There' s lots of ⓒ There are a lot of ⓓ There are much

11) Mr Smith is having a cup of tea and .... bread.
ⓐ any ⓑ some ⓒ a ⓓ an

12) Our school doesn't have............ pupils.
ⓐ much ⓑ very ⓒ many ⓓ a lot of

13) He has............ pens, he can give me one of them.
ⓐ much ⓑ a little ⓒ a few ⓓ few

14) There is............ in my soup.
ⓐ hairs ⓑ some hair ⓒ a hair ⓓ any hair

15) Politics .... popular at this university.
ⓐ has ⓑ are ⓒ be ⓓ is

Fill in gap:

16) All the news .... good last week.
17) .... the police know how the accident happened?
18) How .... baggage do you have?
19) Eighty pounds............ enough to buy a meal.
20) How............ pieces of information have you read in this report?

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21) How many time does the performance last? [..............................]
22) The police wants to interview two men about the robbery. [..............................]
23) The trousers you bought for me doesn't fit me. [..............................]
24) Little pupils came to the class today because it was raining heavily [..............................]
25) If you want to know the news, you can read paper. [..............................]

3 Advanced Exercises

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) There .... many wooden houses last century.
ⓐ was ⓑ were ⓒ have been ⓓ had
2) Some species of animals .... in danger of being extinct.
ⓐ is ⓑ are ⓒ was ⓓ has
3) The dead man's .... include no will.
ⓐ paper ⓑ a paper ⓒ papers ⓓ papyrus
4) The teachers, as well as the headmaster, ... to hold a meeting.
ⓐ is wanting ⓑ want ⓒ wants ⓓ are wanting
5) She is ....intelligent for this job.
ⓐ too much ⓑ too many ⓒ too ⓓ enough
6) There is .... money in the bank, I'm afraid.
ⓐ any ⓑ no ⓒ a lot ⓓ not
7) No one knows that the team .... very different lives in private.
ⓐ lead ⓑ leads ⓒ has led ⓓ is leading
8) She lent me............ twenty pound note last week.
ⓐ any ⓑ some ⓒ a ⓓ many
9) The committee members' disagreement .... caused a serious problem.
ⓐ has ⓑ have ⓒ was ⓓ were
10) You need .... money to travel around the world.
ⓐ much ⓑ many ⓒ a lot of ⓓ a few
11) I have............ money, however I can buy my needs.
ⓐ little ⓑ a little ⓒ few ⓓ many
12) Mai together with her friends .... playing football.
ⓐ is ⓑ are ⓒ am ⓓ were
13) He asked the electrician to fit ....
ⓐ light ⓑ a light ⓒ some light ⓓ much light
14) I want to print some documents, but the printer is out of ....
ⓐ papers ⓑ paper ⓒ a paper ⓒ many papers
15) The passengers' luggage .... searched carefully at the airport customs.
ⓐ was ⓑ has ⓒ were ⓓ had

Fill in gap:

16) We hardly have .... bread left in the kitchen.
17) The principal along with teachers .... going to the camp.
18) There are............ books on shelf. They are not enough
19) The advice he gave me............ very useful.
20) A group of cattle .... called a herd.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21) One of our national team player became the best player in Africa. [..............................]
22) Your face looks familiar. Haven't I seen you everywhere before? [..............................]
23) Toka as well as her classmates are talkative. [..............................]
24) Time is very important so you shouldn't waste them. [..............................]
25) The boss not the workers have the final say. [..............................]

2) Pronouns الضمائر

الضمير عبارة عن كلمة تستخدم بدلا من الاسم وتحل محله ويمكن تقسيم الضمائر إلى :

1) Subject Pronouns	ضمائر الفاعل
2) Object Pronouns	ضمائر المفعول
3) Possessive Pronouns	ضمائر الملكية
4) Reflexive pronouns	الضمائر المنعكسة
5) Demonstrative Pronouns	ضمائر الإشارة
6) Indefinite Pronouns	ضمائر غير محددة
7) Relative Pronouns	ضمائر الوصل

ادرس هذا الجدول جيداً

Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Object Pronouns ضمائر المفعول	Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية	Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية	Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة
I انا	me	my......	mine	myself
He هو	him	his....	his	himself
She هي	her	her....	hers	herself
It هذا (لغير العاقل)	it	its....	------	itself
You انت / انتم	you	your....	yours	Yourself مفرد Yourselves جمع
They هم	them	their....	theirs	themselves
We نحن	us	our....	ours	ourselves
One واحد / أى شخص	one	one's....	one's	oneself

1) Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل

I	he	she	it	You	They	We	One
انا	هو	هي	هذا (لغير العاقل)	انت / انتم	هم	نحن	واحد / أى شخص

هي الضمائر التي تحل محل الفاعل أى تأتي أول الجملة لاحظ أن الضمير فى اللغة الإنجليزية يجب أن يكون بارزاً ولكنه فى العربية قد يكون بارزا أو مستترا.

- أنا ونحن (I , we) يسمى ضمير المتكلم

✓ I hit the ball.
✓ We like football.

- الضمير هم (They) جمع للعاقل وغير العاقل

✓ They speak English.
✓ I like lions because they are strong.

- ضمائر الغائب: (He, She, It) وجمعها (They) تحل محل الفاعل الغائب

✓ Ali (He) is a good pupil.
✓ Jana (She) speaks English well.
✓ My friends (They) go to the stadium.
✓ New cities (They) are built every year
✓ A cat (It) likes fish.

- ضمير المخاطب أنت / أنتم (you) فى حالة المفرد وحالة الجمع لها نفس التكوين.

✓ What are you doing, Ali? مفرد (أنت)
✓ What are you doing, my friends? جمع (أنتم)

2) Object Pronouns ضمائـــر المفعـــول

me	him	her	it	you	them	us	one
انا	هو	هي	هذا (لغير العاقل)	انت / انتم	هم	نحن	واحد / أى شخص

هي الضمائر التي تحل محل المفعول أى تأتي بعد الفعل أو حرف الجر وللحظ أن الضمير فى اللغة الإنـجليزية يجب أن يكون بارزًا ولكنه فى العربية قد يكون بارزا أو مستترا.

- تستخدم بعد الفعل فى الجملة المبنية للمعلوم

✓ I don't like dogs (**them**).
✓ Ali visited **me** yesterday.

- تستخدم بعد **by** فى الجملة المبنية للمجهول

✓ The letter was written by **her**.
✓ I was visited by Ali (**him**).

- تستخدم بعد حروف الجر

✓ They laughed at **him**.
✓ I spoke with **her**.
✓ He apologized to **us**.
✓ We listened to **them**.

- الضمير (**you**) له نفس التكوين فى حالة الفاعل وحالة المفعول به

✓ Did I see **you** before? ضمير مفعول
✓ **You** look pale. ضمير فاعل

- الضمير (**one**) له نفس التكوين فى حالة الفاعل وحالة المفعول به وجمعه (**ones**)

تأتي بمعني المرء ويمكن وضع you مكانها
✓ **One** (You) should work hard to succeed.

تحل (one) محل اسم عندما يأتي بعد صفة
✓ This loaf is stale; please give me a fresh **one**.
✓ Are there any new books? I've read all these old **ones**.

نستخدم one مع صفات الإشارة للتعبير عن مقارنة أوانتقاء
✓ That lute is broken; I'll take this **one**.
✓ Don't use those colours; use these **ones**.

- الضمير (**it**) له نفس التكوين فى حالة الفاعل وحالة المفعول به

✓ I saw **it** in the zoo yesterday. ضمير مفعول
✓ **It** was a very big car. ضمير فاعل

- يتحول الضمير (**it**) فى حالة الجمع إلى (**they**) للفاعل (**them**) للمفعول

✓ The birds (**They**) live in nests.
✓ The bird (**It**) lives in a nest.
✓ I saw bees (**them**).
✓ I saw a bee (**It**).

- للحظ استخدام الضمير (**it**) فى حالة الفاعل والمفعول به كما يلي:

يمكننا استخدام it مع	غير العاقل	▸ There is no water in **it**.
	الحيوانات (المتوحشة) ولكن لاحظ فى حالة الحيوانات الإليفة ممكن استخدام he - she	▸ The dog barked at me. It was sitting in the dark. ▸ My kitten is ill. **She** doesn't eat.
	الجماد	▸ This is my new flat, I bought **it** last week.
	العاقل	▸ The baby is crying; see what's wrong with **it**.
	الأفعال المتعلقة بالأحوال الجوية	▸ **It** is beautiful weather.
	تعبيرات الزمن	▸ **It** is six o'clock.
	تعبيرات القياس	▸ **It** is five miles to the station.
	كفاعـل تحضيري أو تمهيـدي يشـير إلى عبارة أو شبه جملة	▸ **It** is nice to see you well. ▸ **It** is pleasure to meet you, sir.
	لتأكيد كلمة أو عبارة	▸ **It** is you who did that.
	يمكن أن تحل محل جملة كاملة	▸ He is trying to master him, he won't find **it** easy.
	بعض التعبيرات	▸ **It** is a year since I met her.

3) Possessive Pronouns ضمائــــر الملكيــــة

Possessive Adjectives صفــــات الملكيــــة

my....	his...	her...	its...	your..	their...	our...	one's...
mine	his	hers	-	yours	theirs	ours	one's
ملكي	ملكه	ملكها		ملكك	ملكهم	ملكنا	ملكك

ضمائر الملكية تحل محل الأسماء وبذلك تستعمل بدلاً من الأسماء التي تشير اليها

يأتى بعد صفات الملكية اسم:

✓ This is my new car.
✓ I didn't see her cat.
✓ This is his mobile.
✓ The hen is sitting on its nest.

لا يأتى بعد ضمائر الملكية اسم

✓ This car belongs to me. It's mine.
✓ This car belongs to Aya. It's hers.
✓ This car belongs to Ali. It's his.
✓ This book is ours.

للحظ أن (its) صفة ملكية أى يأتي بعدها ولا يوجد للضمير it ضمير ملكية لان الغير عاقل ليس له ملكية

✓ You will break its legs.

للحظ التركيب التالى:

اسم + صفة ملكية= own صفة ملكية = ضمير ملكية+ (of اسم جمع) of اسم مفرد a / an

✓ They are friends of mine (my own). = They are my friends.
✓ He is a husband of hers (her own). = He is her husband.

يمكننا التعبير عن الملكية بأكثر من صيغة

✓ This is Toka's book.
= This is her book.
= This book is hers.
= This book is Toka's.
= This book belongs to Toka.

4) Reflexive pronouns الضمائــر المنعكسة

myself	himself	herself	itself	yourself yourselves	themselves	ourselves	oneself
بنفسي	بنفسه	بنفسها	بنفسه (غير عاقل)	بنفسك/بأنفسكم	بأنفسهم	بأنفسنا	بنفسه

نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة فى حالة ان يكون الفاعل هو نفسة المفعول

✓ You can blame yourself.
✓ Ali and Hani injured themselves when they fell off their bicycles.
✓ She fell over, but she didn't hurt herself.

نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة للتأكيد علي من قام بالفعل وتأتي بعد الفاعل أو المفعول

✓ I myself did the job. = I did the job myself.
✓ The president himself gave her the award.
= The president gave her the award himself.

يستخدم الضمير المنعكس بمعنى (بدون مساعدة من أحد / بمفردة) عندما يسبق بـ by ويساوى (on صفة ملكية+own)

by myself = on my own = alone = without any help
by himself =on his own = alone = without any help

✓ I went to the cinema alone (on my own) (by myself) (without any help).
✓ Did you paint that picture on your own (alone) (by yourself) (without any help)?

للاحظ الاختلاف ما بين:

on my own = by myself = alone	تعبر عن قيامي بالشيء بمفردي
of my own = belong to me	الملكية تعبر عن / ملكي

✓ I learned to use this computer **on my own**.

✓ He has a car **of his own** = This car **belongs to** him

لا تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر التالية (**with - next to - behind - about**) ولكن نستخدم ضمائر المفعول:

✓ Can I sit next **to you**? ✓ I will take you **with me**.

يمكن أن نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر **after / for / on**:

✓ The children are old enough to **look after themselves**.

✓ She can depend **on herself**.

لا تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة عادةً مع بعض الأفعال مثل:

shower / shave / dress / relax / wash / wake up / sit down / stand up

✓ I **showered** and **dressed**.

5) Demonstrative Pronouns ضمائــــر الإشـــارة

this	that	these	those
هذا	تلك	هؤلاء	أولئك
للمفرد القريب	للمفرد البعيد	للجمع القريب	للجمع البعيد
بعدها فعل مفرد	بعدها فعل مفرد	بعدها فعل جمع	بعدها فعل جمع

تشير ضمائر الاشارة إلى الأشياء التي تدل عليها وتميزها وتحددها أو تدل على الأشياء لتحديدها

✓ **This** is the one I want. ✓ He had told her off. **That's** why she was so upset.

✓ **These** are my books. ✓ **Those** were their bags.

تستخدم كضمائر إذا حلت محل الاسم أو تكون صفات اشارة إذا جاء بعدها اسم

✓ **This** is my hat. ضمير ✓ **This book** is interesting. صفة

6) Indefinite Pronouns الضمائر غير المحددة

تستخدم للتعبير عن أشخاص أو أشياء أو أماكن غير محددة:

every....	everybody	كل فرد	everything	كل شيء
	everyone	كل فرد	everywhere	فى كل مكان
some....	someone	شخص ما	something	شيء ما
	somebody	شخص ما	somewhere	مكان ما
any....	anybody	أى فرد	anywhere	فى أى مكان
	anyone	أى فرد	anything	أى شيء
no....	no one	لا أحد	nothing	لاشيء
	nobody	لا أحد	nowhere	لا مكان

each	كل	another + مفرد	أخر (للمفرد)	some	بعض
every	كل	other + جمع	أخر (للجمع)	any	أى
all	كل	others	الآخرون (بدون اسم)	many	كثير (للعدد)
both	كلاهما	the other	الآخر	few	قليل (للعدد)
neither	لا	such	مثل	much	كثير (للكمية)
either	أى	none	لا أحد	less	قليل(للكمية)

all

الاسم والفعل بعدها مفرد أو جمع طبقا هل يعد أولا يعد

1) all + فعل مفرد + اسم مفرد لا يعد	➲ All the **money was** stolen.
2) all / all of + فعل جمع + اسم جمع	➲ All (of) my **students are** dates.
3) all of + ضمير مفعول = ضمير + all	➲ All **of** them **are** intelligent. = They **all are** intelligent.

both

الاسم والفعل بعدها دائماً جمع وتشير إلى شخصين أو شيئين

1) both (of) فعل جمع + اسم جمع	➲ **Both** books **are** useful.
2) both.....and ....+ فعل جمع	➲ **Both** Jana and Toka **are** clever.
3) both (of) + فعل جمع + ضمير مفعول	➲ **Both of us are** tall.
= ضمير + both + فعل جمع	➲ = We **both are** tall.
4) استخدام (both) بدون (of) كضمير فاعل	➲ I saw Jana and Toka. **Both were** sad.

each

الاسم والفعل بعدها مفرد (إلا فى حالة اسم جمع فعل مفرد بعد (لا يأتي قبلها حال) تشير إلى شخصين أو شيئين

1) each + فعل مفرد + اسم مفرد	➲ **Each student** here **is** clever.
2) each of + فعل مفرد + اسم جمع أو ضمير	➲ **Each of them(students) is** clever.
3) each تستخدم كضمير فاعل	➲ I have two sisters. **Each** has long hair.

every

الاسم والفعل بعدها مفرد وتشير إلى أكثر من اثنين ولا تستخدم كضمير ولا يأتي بعدها of

1) every + فعل مفرد + اسم مفرد	➲ **Every student** here **is** clever.
2) (nearly - almost...) every يأتي قبلها حال	➲ **Nearly every** student was lazy.
3) قبل الوقت	➲ I visited my relatives **every** week.

either

الاسم والفعل بعدها مفرد إلا فى حالة of يكون الاسم جمع والفعل مفرد

1) either + فعل مفرد + اسم مفرد	➲ **Either** book **has** useful information.
2) either of + فعل مفرد أو جمع + اسم جمع	➲ **Either** of my **students** gets the full mark.
3) either + فاعل + or + فاعل الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني	➲ **Either** Jana **or** her friends **are** active
4) فعل منفى + either	➲ I **didn't** like **either** of my photos.

Neither

الاسم والفعل بعدها مفرد إلا فى حالة of يكون الاسم جمع والفعل مفرد:

1) neither + فعل مفرد + اسم مفرد	➲ **Neither** student **is** clever.
2) neither of + فعل مفرد +اسم جمع	➲ **Neither of** my **students is** clever.
3) neither +فاعل + nor + فاعل الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني	➲ **Neither** Mai **nor** her friends **are** lazy.
4) يمكن استخدامها كضمير	➲ I phoned Mona and Mai, but **neither was** available.

Important Notes

① لاحظ أن الضمائر التالية تأخذ دائما فعل مفرد وعند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير مفرد أيضا

(something / nothing / anything / everything)

- Everything has been prepared as it should have been planned.
- I saw something in the garden. I think, it is a wild animal.

② الضمائر التالية تأخذ دائما فعلاً مفرداً ولكن عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع (they - them - their)
أو استخدام (he or she) مكان الفاعل (him or her) مكان المفعول

(someone /somebody / no one / nobody / anyone /anybody / everyone / everybody

- Somebody has cleaned the house. They have watered the flowers.
- Each student in the group is doing their best.
- No one was in the house. They (He or She) were in the party.
- Somebody stole my wallet. I didn't recognise them (him or her).

③ لاحظ الفرق بين

another + اسم مفرد يعد (= one more)

- This tea is nice. I'd like another cup.
- I'd like to stay here for another two days.

other + اسم جمع يعد/ (و أحياناً اسم لا يعد)

- I need to research this with other classmates.
- There was certainly other information.

others + يأتي بعدها فعل جمع ويمكن أن تاتى فى نهاية الجملة

- Some people are rich; others are poor.
- Some writers are greater than others.

The other + v. يأتي بعدها فعل مفرد ويمكن أن تاتى فى نهاية الجملة

- She has two kittens, one is black and the other is all white.
- He had his hat in one hand and a bunch of flowers in the other.

④ لاحظ مع هذه التعبيرات الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني (Either..or../Neither..nor../Not only..but also..)

- Neither Ahmed nor I am happy.
- Not only Jana but also they are late.
- Either I or Aya is out of the competition.

⑤ لاحظ ما يأتي بعد:

each - every - either - neither (is - was - has - V+S فعل مفرد قد يكون)
each - either - neither + of + (اسمع جمع) + (is - was - has - V+S فعل مفرد قد يكون)

- Every student here is clever.
- Either book has useful information.
- Neither student is clever.
- Every student here is clever. (every of لا يمكننا قول)

- Each of students is clever.
- Either of my students gets the full mark.
- Neither of my students is clever.

7) Relative Pronouns ضمائــــر الوصــــل

سوف يتم شرحهم فى جزء منفصل

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) The little boy is playing with .... toys.
ⓐ her ⓑ its ⓒ their ⓓ his

2) They knew all about my friend and ....
ⓐ I ⓑ me ⓒ we ⓓ our

3) There are many people in .... houses here.
ⓐ that ⓑ those ⓒ this ⓓ these

4) Helen asked .... to get some milk.
ⓐ me ⓑ mine ⓒ I ⓓ my

5) .... books are new.
ⓐ You ⓑ Your ⓒ Yours ⓓ Yourself

6) .... girls are playing basketball.
ⓐ Those ⓑ That ⓒ This ⓓ There

7) They are walking with .... puppies.
ⓐ them ⓑ theirs ⓒ they ⓓ their

8) We finished our homework. We finished it by ....
ⓐ ourselves ⓑ themselves ⓒ yourself ⓓ herself

9) I came here with John and ....
ⓐ her ⓑ she ⓒ he ⓓ they

10) The little girl had a cup of tea in .... hands.
ⓐ his ⓑ your ⓒ her ⓓ our

11) The doctor told Huda and Nabil to take care of ....
ⓐ ourselves ⓑ herself ⓒ themselves ⓓ yourself

12) Mai and Mona are going to the cinema with .... friends.
ⓐ her ⓑ its ⓒ their ⓓ hers

13) Each of the books .... a different colour.
ⓐ has ⓑ are ⓒ were ⓓ have

14) People were standing on .... side of the road.
ⓐ each ⓑ all ⓒ both ⓓ neither

15) Ali's coming to visit .... in September.
ⓐ we ⓑ us ⓒ ours ⓓ our

Fill in gap:

16) .... is very hot today and windy.
17) Yes, I saw .... in town last week. He's looking really well.
18) Let .... give you a hand?
19) He cut .... with a knife.
20) .... of my friends is kind so I like them.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21) These bag is mine. [..............................]
22) Here is my new car, I bought her recently. [..............................]
23) Ali met each of our. [..............................]
24) Do you want everything else? [..............................]
25) Those pupils in these class are not clever. [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) Go and see .... and his friend.
ⓐ he ⓑ them ⓒ they ⓓ him

2) This island belongs to .... who were here first.
ⓐ they ⓑ them ⓒ their ⓓ those

3) We are much better than .... at football.
ⓐ them ⓑ they ⓒ their ⓓ there

4) "Did you read the two articles?" "Yes, but .... good."
ⓐ neither were ⓑ neither was ⓒ either was ⓓ none was

5) Would you like .... cup of tea?
ⓐ the others ⓑ other ⓒ others ⓓ another

6) There is only one .... person who could help us.
ⓐ the others ⓑ other ⓒ others ⓓ another

7) Each of the companies .... a local charity.
ⓐ are supporting ⓑ supporting ⓒ supports ⓓ support

8) If I don't wear my glasses, everything .... just a blur.
ⓐ was ⓑ has ⓒ is ⓓ are

9) Neither restaurant .... expensive.
ⓐ has ⓑ are ⓒ were ⓓ is

10) Neither Mustafa nor his friends............ wealthy.
ⓐ has ⓑ is ⓒ are ⓓ have

11) We had two keys but .... would open the door.
ⓐ either ⓑ neither ⓒ nor ⓓ both

12) Is this your sister's? -No, it isn't ....
ⓐ of her ⓑ hers ⓒ of she ⓓ she's

13) The two girls were sitting in front of ....
ⓐ we ⓑ us ⓒ our ⓓ ours

14) "Whose is that car?" "I think it's ...."
ⓐ of them ⓑ theirs ⓒ of they ⓓ their

15) He .... could not read it although he had written it.
ⓐ herself ⓑ his ⓒ him ⓓ himself

Fill in gap:

16) Those are the children and that is .... school.
17) Is that bicycle yours? - No, it isn't ....
18) This house is too small. We need a bigger ....
19) "Is that Mary's husband?" "Yes, he's .... husband."
20) I can see that each of the houses .... painted white.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21) Hany, Ali and Ahmed each has a bicycle. [................................]
22) I am sure that everybody now like that house. [................................]
23) All is clever except this one. [................................]
24) Each man write in a different way. [................................]
25) Don't use those colours; use this ones. [................................]

3 Advanced Exercises

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) She went to the cinema with a friend of ....
ⓐ hers ⓑ his ⓒ her's ⓓ she
2) I'd like .... come with us to the disco.
ⓐ she to ⓑ her to ⓒ her ⓓ she
3) Is anybody there? - Yes, ...
ⓐ it is ⓑ there is ⓒ she is ⓓ there are
4) What do you think of those two?" "Well, to tell you the truth, I like ...."
ⓐ neither of them ⓑ either of them ⓒ either ⓓ neither of they
5) I couldn't find the station, so I asked someone if .... could direct me.
ⓐ them ⓑ she ⓒ he ⓓ they
6) None of us could see .... the player .... the racket.
ⓐ neither/nor ⓑ either/or ⓒ both/or ⓓ neither/and
7) I felt like kicking .... when I saw the exam paper.
ⓐ myself ⓑ me ⓒ mine ⓓ my
8) Little Nelly won't be able to manage ....
ⓐ by herself ⓑ herself ⓒ by itself ⓓ to herself
9) Each of the .... a lot of time.
ⓐ men is ⓑ men has ⓒ man have ⓓ man has
10) I have .... lot of books to read.
ⓐ other ⓑ another ⓒ the others ⓓ others
11) Mr Marwan says that he doesn't want .... to see him.
ⓐ nobody ⓑ anybody ⓒ somebody ⓓ no one
12) "I can't remember what she said." "............ ."
ⓐ Neither do I ⓑ Nor can I ⓒ Me neither ⓓ Me either
13) Well, you haven't asked ....
ⓐ neither of us ⓑ either of us ⓒ neither of we ⓓ either of we
14) Both were tall, but .... plays basketball.
ⓐ all ⓑ both ⓒ either ⓓ neither
15) We had a discussion with a friend of ....
ⓐ he ⓑ we ⓒ his ⓓ his's

Fill in gap:

16) We didn't see .... of the children.
17) The Queen .... came to see us.
18) He went to the party .... his own.
19) Old Mr Mazen often cuts .... shaving.
20) We've got two books to read, but I haven't read .... yet.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21) I know that each of the boy has a pen. [..............................]
22) Other think that I am a rich man, but I don't. [..............................]
23) There were many dresses, but either of them was big enough. [..............................]
24) Jana had a discussion with a friend of him. [..............................]
25) This loaf is stale; please give me a fresh it. [..............................]

3) Verb الفعـــــــل

الفعل عبارة عن كلمة تستخدم للتعبير عن حركة أو حالة أو حدث وتأتي بعد الفاعل ويمكن من خلاله تحديد زمن الجملة.

✓ He **works** hard.
✓ I **will take** you with me.
✓ I **am eating pasta** now.

للحظ ان الفعل يتبع الفاعل من حيث المفرد والجمع

① إذا كان الفاعل جمع يأتي بعده فعل جمع (are - were - have - infinitive)
② إذا كان الفاعل مفرد يأتي بعده فعل مفرد (is - was - has - v+s)

✓ I **suppose** you **are** right.
✓ Students **are** intelligent.
✓ He **has** gone home.

للبد ان يكون الفعل فى اللغة الإنجليزية ظاهراً بخلاف اللغة العربية التي يمكن ان يكون الفعل مستتراً مثل:

✓ He **is** a teacher. هو مدرس
✓ He **is** a man. إنه رجل
✓ They **are** doctors. هم اطباء

Forms of verbs اشكـــال الفعـــل

الشكل	المعنى	التكوين	أمثلة				
Infinitive	مصدر	الفعل بدون أى اضافات	visit	eat	drink	have	be
Present	مضارع	التصـــريف الأول للفعـــل قـــد يشـــبه المصدر مع الجمع أو اضافة s مع المفرد	visit (s)	eat (s)	drink(s)	have has	am-is-are
Past	ماضي	التصريف الثاني للفعـل باضـافة ed أو يكون غير منتظم	visited	ate	drank	had	was-were
Past Participle	اسم المفعول	التصريف الثالث للفعـل باضـافة ed أو يكون غير منتظم	visited	eaten	drunk	had	been
Present Participle	اسم الفاعل	اضافة ing اخر الفعل	visiting	eating	drinking	having	being

للحظ ان : أشكال المضارع والماضي تسمي اللفعال **Finite Verbs** للنّها محددقشكل الفاعل أى يتغير شكلها بتغير الفاعل المحدودة من حيث الأفراد والجمع يتغير شكلها فى الماضي عن الحاضر.

للحظ ان : أشكال المصدر **infinitive** واسم المفعول **Past participle** واسم الفاعل **Present participle** يسمي بالأفعال غير المحدودة **Non-finites or Infinities** للن شكلها ثابت لا يتغير بتغير الفاعل أو زمن الجملة.

Types of verbs أنـــــواع الفعـــل

Compound verb

فعـــل مركـــب

هو فعل مكون من جزأين أو أكثر

Helping verb + Main verb

Simple verb

فعـــل بسيـــط

هو فعل مكون من جزء واحد فقط و يسمي

Main verb

Ali **speaks** English fluently.	**speaks** فعل بسيط يتكون من جزء واحد فقط (فى زمن المضارع البسيط)
She **visited** us yesterday.	**visited** فعل بسيط يتكون من جزء واحد فقط (فى زمن الماضي البسيط)
He **is reading** a novel.	**is reading** فعل مركب يتكون من جزئين (فعل مساعد **is** + فعل اساسي **reading**)
I **have been studying** English all day.	**have been studying** فعل مركب يتكون من ثلاث أجزاء (فعل مساعد **have** + فعل مساعد **been** + فعل اساسي **studying**)

ويمكننا تقسيم اللفعال إلى نوعان الأفعال اللازمة والأفعال المتعدية.

الأفعال اللازمة: وتسمي أفعال لازمة لأنها تؤدي معنى كاملا بذاتها دون أن يتعدى أثره إلى مفعول به علي سبيل المثال:

say	die	fall	complain	happen	collapse	disappear	appear

الأفعال المتعدية: وتسمي أفعال متعدية لأنها لا تؤدي المعنى مكتملاً بذاتها ولابد من مفعول به حتى يكتمل معناها مثل:

tell	give	encourage	defeat	create	obey	visit	complete

Helping Verbs الأفعــال المساعـدة

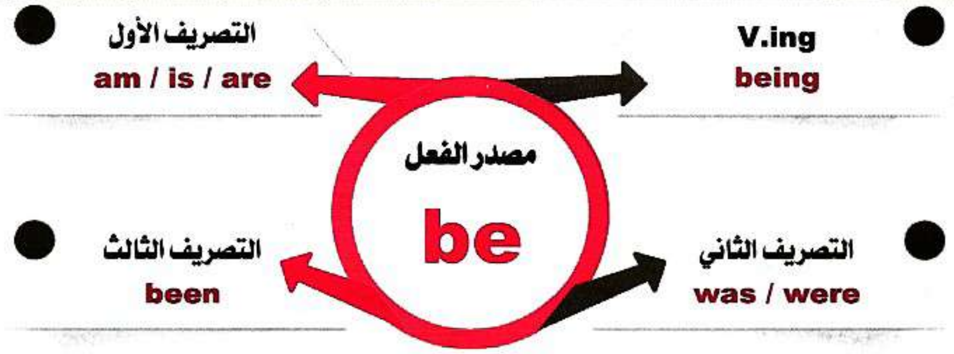
- Verb to be مجموعة أفعال يكون
- Verb to have مجموعة أفعال يمتلك
- Verb to do مجموعة أفعال يفعل
- Modal verbs الأفعــال الناقصــة

يتم اختيار الفعل المساعد المناسب من الاربع افعال السابقة على حسبِ الزمن الذي يصاغ فيه فعل الجملة، وعلى حسب فاعله.

◄ سميت بالأفعال المساعدة لأنها تساعدنا فى تحديد زمن الفعل.	He is playing tennis now.(مضارع مستمر)
◄ تستخدم فى النفى باضافة n't/not بعد الفعل.	He isn't playing tennis now.
◄ تستخدم فى السؤال بتقديم الفعل المساعد علي الفاعل.	Is he playing tennis now?
◄ تستخدم فى المبني للمجهول بإضافة V. be للفعل وبعده التصريف الثالث	Tennis is being played now by him.

Verb to be

Infinitive المصدر	Present مضارع (التصريف الاول)	Past ماضي (التصريف الثاني)	Past participle التصريف الثالث / اسم المفعول	Present Participle اسم الفاعل
be	am - is - are	was - were	been	being



يأتى مع الفاعل المفرد (am - is - was) أما الفاعل الجمع يأخذ (are - were).

للحظ إننا يمكننا استخدام v. be كفعل اساسي بمعني يكون أو كان.

✓ I am not a doctor, I am a teacher

واستخدامه كفعل مساعد ليدل علي الزمن أو النفى أو المجهول وهنا لا يترجم الفعل المساعد و يأتى بعدهم ing or P.P

✓ I was doing my homework.
✓ Are you watching TV now?
✓ She isn't studying at the moment.
✓ They were given a good lesson yesterday.

تستخدم be المصدر بعد اللفعال الناقصة أو الأفعال التي تتبع بـ to كفعل أساسي بمعني يكون أو فعل مساعد فى المجهول

✓ They will be playing football tomorrow.
✓ The race is expected to be canceled.
✓ Will you be with us tomorrow?
✓ The city will be built in 2030.

تستخدم **be** المصدر لتوجبة أمر أو نستخدم **Don't be** / **Never be** فى النهي وهنا تكون فعل أساسي بمعني كن / لا تكن

✓ **Be** always in time
✓ **Don't be** shy
✓ **Never be** in a hurry.

- تستخدم **be to + inf.** للتعبير عن ترتيب مقرر (موعد) أو اعطاء أوامر وتعليمات بمعني من المفروض ان

✓ Nobody **is to** know.
✓ You **are not to** do that.

- تستخدم **(being)** بعد **(am - is - are - was - were)** لتكوين المبنى للمجهول فى زمن المضارع المستمر والماضي المستمر

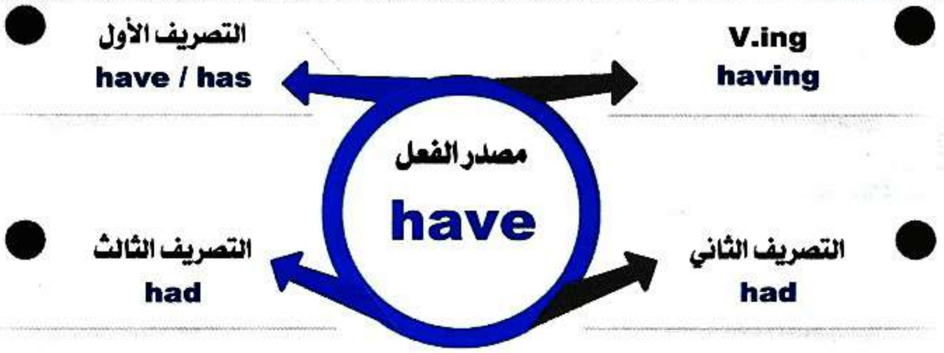
✓ The meal **was being cooked** at 7 o'clock yesterday.

- تستخدم **(been)** بعد **(have - has- had)** لتكوين المبنى للمجهول فى زمن المضارع التام والماضي التام

✓ This novel **has been published** since I was ten.

Verb to have

Infinitive المصدر	Present مضارع(التصريف الأول)	Past ماضي (التصريف الثاني)	Past participle التصريف الثالث / اسم المفعول	Present Participle اسم الفاعل
have	have - has	had	had	having



- ياتي مع الفاعل المفرد فى المضارع **(has)** اما الفاعل الجمع يأخذ **(have)** والماضي **(had)** مع أى صيغة للفاعل
- يمكننا اختصار **(has)** إلى **('s)** واختصار **(have)** إلى **('ve)** واختصار **(had)** إلى **('d)**
- لاحظ اننا يمكننا استخدام **v. have**

كفعل اساسي بمعني يمتلك / يتناول / يأخذ/ ......

✓ I **have** a car but he **has** three.

- و عنده استخدامه كفعل مساعد ليدل علي الزمن أو النفى أو المجهول وهنا لا يترجم الفعل المساعد وياتي بعدهم التصريف الثالث.

✓ She **has** got a car.
✓ He **has lived** here since 2019

- نستخدم **have + (don't - doesn't - didn't)** لنفى **v. have** إذا كان فعل أساسي
- أما إذا كان فعل مساعد **(hasn't - haven't - hadn't)+ P.P**

✓ I **don't have** a flat.
✓ Ali **doesn't have** many friends.
✓ Aya **hasn't got** any sisters.
✓ She didn't come because I **hadn't called** her.

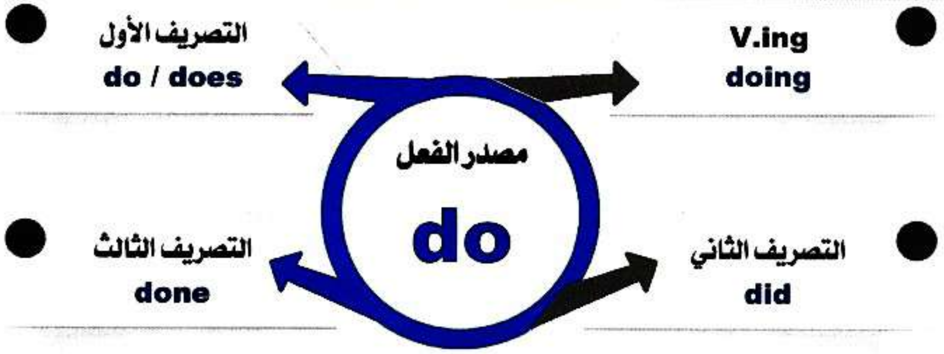
Wise Saying

A guilty conscience needs no accuser

الضمير الشاعر بالذنب لا يحتاج لوعظ

Verb to do

Infinitive المصدر	Present مضارع(التصريف الاول)	Past ماضي (التصريف الثاني)	Past participle التصريف الثالث / اسم المفعول	Present Participle اسم الفاعل
do	do - does	did	done	doing



- يأتي مع الفاعل المفرد فى المضارع (**does**) أما الفاعل الجمع يأخذ (**do**) والماضي (**did**) مع أى صيغة للفاعل
- للحظ إننا يمكننا استخدام **v. do**

كفعل اساسي بمعني يفعل / يقوم بـ ✓ I **did** the right thing. ✓ I **do** all my homework well.

- واستخدامه كفعل مساعد ليدل على الزمن أو النفى وهنا لا يترجم الفعل المساعد ويأتي بعدهم المصدر

✓ **Did** she **go** to school yesterday? ✓ I **don't** like smoking.

- تستخدم (**do - does - did**) فى حالة عدم وجود فعل مساعد فى الجملة من أجل النفى أو تكوين سؤال

do	go / visit	إذا كان فعل الجملة فى المصدر (بدون أى أضافات) مع الفاعل الجمع
does	goes/ visits	إذا كان فعل الجملة منتهى بـ (s / es / ies) مع الفاعل المفرد
did	went / visited	إذا كان فعل الجملة منتهى بـ (d /ed / ied) أو فعل ماضى غير منتظم

- تستخدم (**do - does - did**) قبل الفعل الأساسي فى الجمل المثبتة من أجل لتكوين صيغة توكيد (تأكيد علي الكلام)

✓ I **do** trust you. ✓ She **did** hate cowards.
✓ He **does** see life.

Modal verbs

will	can	shall	may	must
would	could	should	might	

- سميت الأفعال النّاقصة بهذا الاسم لأن بعضها يوجد له حاضر وماضي فقط ولا يوجد له تصريف ثالث (اسم مفعول) وأيضاً لا يمكن أن تأتى كفعل أساسي بمفردها لابد أن يأتي بعدهم فعل أساسي ليتم المعني.
- يأتي وراء الأفعال النّاقصة جميعهم مصدر الفعل (بدون أى اضافات) ومن غير **to**
- تستخدم **shall** مع ضميرالمتكَلم (**We** أو **I**) فقط وتستخدم **will** مع باقي الضمائر (**They, You, He, She, It**)

✓ I **can** carry this heavy bag. ✓ You **might** work much and earn little.
✓ We **shall** get there first. ✓ She **won't** listen to me.

Wise Saying

GIANTS

If you think education is expensive-try ignorance.
إذا كنت تعتقد أن التعليم ثمنه باهظ جرب الجهل قد يكون أقل كلفة

Other modals

	have to has to	need need to	ought to dare (to)
المضارع	have to + inf. has to + inf.	need to + inf. need + inf.	ought to + inf. dare to + inf.
النفى فى المضارع	don't have to + inf. doesn't have to + inf.	don't need to + inf. doesn't need to + inf. needn't + inf.	ought not to + inf. daren't + inf.
الماضي	had to + inf.	needed to + inf. needed + inf.	
النفى فى الماضي	didn't have to + inf.	didn't need to + inf. needn't have + P.P	سوف يتم شرحهم فى جزء منفصل

Important Notes

للحظ استخدام **so and neither** مع اللفعال المساعدة

نستخدم (فاعل + فعل مساعد + **so**) فى الاثبات لتعبر عن قيام الفاعل بما فعله الفاعل الاول

نستخدم (فاعل + فعل مساعد + **neither**) فى النفى لتعبر عن عدم قيام الفاعلان بالشيء وتساوي

(**neither** + فعل مساعد + فاعل) = (**nor** + فعل مساعد + فاعل) = (فعل مساعد + فاعل) **not + either**

- ✓ "I'm tired." "So am I." (= I'm tired too.)
- ✓ Sarah hasn't got a car and neither has Mark.
- ✓ "I don't know." "Neither do I." or "Nor do I." or "I don't either."

للحظ فى حالة عدم وجود فعل مساعد فى الجملة اللولي نضع (do - does - did) طبقا للفعل الأساسي

- ✓ "I never read newspaper." "Neither do I." (= I never read newspapers either)

للحظ أن فى هذه الحالة نستخدم بعد neither - so فعل مساعد وليس فاعل (بعدهما صيغة سؤال)

- ✓ I passed the exam and so did Ali. (NOT so Ali did.)

Wise Saying

If the plan doesn't work, change the plan, but never the goal.

إذا لم تنجح هذه الخطة .غيِّر الخطة،ولكن أبداً لا تغيِّر الهدف

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) How old is your brother, Richard? He .... ten yesterday.
ⓐ is ⓑ has ⓒ was ⓓ had

2) Little Jimmy is very fast. He's just .... it.
ⓐ to finished ⓑ finished ⓒ finish ⓓ to finish

3) The whole cake .... eaten by the children last Sunday.
ⓐ has been ⓑ was ⓒ will be ⓓ is

4) Ali, ... you go to that pub every day?
ⓐ do ⓑ does ⓒ doesn't ⓓ have

5) The two boys .... sitting in the garden yesterday.
ⓐ was ⓑ were ⓒ had ⓓ have

6) .... it hot yesterday?
ⓐ Has ⓑ Was ⓒ Does ⓓ Is

7) .... she got a house ?
ⓐ Have ⓑ Does ⓒ Has ⓓ Is

8) The boy and the girl .... in the room.
ⓐ are ⓑ is ⓒ isn't ⓓ are no

9) The tables .... in the house.
a. are ⓑ will ⓒ have ⓓ does

10) The chair .... in the garden.
a. are ⓑ is ⓒ am ⓓ were

11) Nada, ... down next to me.
ⓐ you sit ⓑ sit you ⓒ sit ⓓ sits

12) Where .... your little daughter yesterday?
ⓐ are ⓑ was ⓒ were ⓓ is

13) .... there any milk in the glass?
ⓐ Had ⓑ Have ⓒ Was ⓓ Were

14) He has no money. - ....
ⓐ Neither do I ⓑ Either have I ⓒ I haven't neither ⓓ I do too

15) Have you .... my new car?
ⓐ see ⓑ seen ⓒ seeing ⓓ saw

Fill in gap:

16) The house .... four rooms.

17) The boys .... a dog.

18) The children .... at home all day yesterday.

19) The two girls .... playing in the park.

20) The children .... very good yesterday.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21) These people here is very violent. [..............................]

22) These two boys are playing tennis last Saturday. [..............................]

23) Where are they live? [..............................]

24) What do he do at weekends? [..............................]

25) Have you all been your breakfast? [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) I .... to go to Madrid last month, on a business trip.
ⓐ must ⓑ had ⓒ have ⓓ has
2) How .... you go to the hypermarket tomorrow?
ⓐ did ⓑ will ⓒ shall ⓓ should
3) I can't remember what she said. ....
ⓐ Neither do I ⓑ Nor can I ⓒ Me neither ⓓ Me either
4) I think my brother .... to come next month.
ⓐ can ⓑ could ⓒ will be ⓓ will be able
5) These people .... very stupid.
ⓐ had ⓑ was ⓒ have ⓓ were
6) I don't like running. ....
ⓐ I do, either ⓑ So do I ⓒ Nor do I ⓓ I don't, too
7) I went to Luxor on holiday............ .
ⓐ I didn't either ⓑ I did, so ⓒ Neither did I ⓓ So did I
8) We .... breakfast in bed.
ⓐ were have ⓑ has ⓒ was having ⓓ had
9) .... John give you those flowers?
ⓐ Did ⓑ Have ⓒ Was ⓓ Is
10) I .... my homework very quickly last night.
ⓐ am ⓑ had ⓒ did ⓓ was
11) Young Ali wasn't feeling well. He .... leave early.
ⓐ has to ⓑ had to ⓒ must ⓓ must to
12) Everybody .... drive a car in my family.
ⓐ was ⓑ can ⓒ is ⓓ are
13) Only Hany .... play the piano.
ⓐ can ⓑ was ⓒ is ⓓ were
14) I've never been to Scotland. Well, ...
ⓐ neither has Tom ⓑ nor is Tom ⓒ Tom hasn't also ⓓ Tom hasn't too
15) Why don't you .... an effort and get up?
ⓐ do ⓑ make ⓒ made ⓓ did

Fill in gap:

16) I could play chess when I .... five.
17) Ali doesn't .... many friends.
18) My brother is going to enter the Institute. So .... my sister.
19) I went to the beach on Sunday morning. .... did I.
20) I watched TV last night but my sister ....

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21) He does enjoys his high grades in his exams. [..............................]
22) We had to helped the old man yesterday. [..............................]
23) The meal was been cooked at 7 o'clock yesterday. [..............................]
24) You are not do that. [..............................]
25) I never go swimming in winter, and so do my friends. [..............................]

3 Advanced Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) She .... a shower every morning before school.
ⓐ does ⓑ has ⓒ did ⓓ is
2) We .... talking to James about his exam.
ⓐ don't ⓑ haven't ⓒ wasn't ⓓ aren't
3) Where .... you yesterday?
ⓐ was ⓑ have ⓒ did ⓓ were
4) We .... a beautiful puppy called Mai.
ⓐ was ⓑ having ⓒ did ⓓ had
5) .... you ever been to Amsterdam?
ⓐ Do ⓑ Does ⓒ Have ⓓ Did
6) Are you a student? - Yes, I ....
ⓐ am ⓑ have ⓒ is ⓓ 'm not
7) She didn't see anyone she knew, and .... did Ahmed.
ⓐ either ⓑ or ⓒ neither ⓓ too
8) He saw nobody in the room, and you? - ....
ⓐ neither did I ⓑ so did I ⓒ neither do I ⓓ so do I
9) .... you speak three languages?
ⓐ Do ⓑ Does ⓒ Were ⓓ Are
10) Toka never does her homework! .... !
ⓐ So does Sally ⓑ Neither does Sally ⓒ Sally doesn't too ⓓ nor doesn't Sally
11) She likes running in the hills. Well............ .
ⓐ so do I ⓑ neither do I ⓒ nor do I ⓓ so would I
12) We've never been to Italy. ....
ⓐ Nor did I ⓑ Neither do I ⓒ Nor have I ⓓ So have I
13) I would never go there alone. ....
ⓐ Neither do I ⓑ Me neither ⓒ Neither would I ⓓ I didn't either
14) My daughter went to the U.S.A last year............ .
ⓐ Also went mine ⓑ Mine either ⓒ So did mine ⓓ Mine too
15) She can go this very morning. ....
ⓐ So can I ⓑ Neither can I ⓒ Nor do I ⓓ So do I

Fill in gap:

16) I forgot to tell my wife. So .... I.
17) I can't remember where it is. .... can I.
18) I had a car but he ....
19) The meal was .... cooked at 7 o'clock yesterday.
20) I have never been to America. Nor .... he.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21) He felt very ill after eating that. Neither did I. [............................]
22) I didn't go to London. Neither can I. [............................]
23) Tomorrow is a public holiday. You needn't to get up early. [............................]
24) He really needs a good sleep. So does I. [............................]
25) I must to carry this heavy bag. [............................]

4) Adjectives الصفـــات

الصفة هي كلمة تصف الاسم والضمير وتأتى الصفة قبل الموصوف أو بعد الأفعال التالية:

V. to be - look - seem - sound - appear - go - get - come - become - stay - feel - taste - smell - touch - fall - grow - turn - how

▶ He bought a new flat. ✓ She was a clever student. ✓ He is lazy.
▶ Toka seems ill. ✓ He gets tired quickly.

لا يحدث أى تغيير للصفة سواء كان الموصوف مفرداً أو جمعاً، مذكراً أو مؤنثاً (الصفة لا تُجمع، وصفة المذكر هي أيضاً صفة للمؤنث)

▶ He is clever. ✓ She is clever. ✓ They are clever.

لاحظ ان الصفة قد تكون:

تستخرج من اسم بإضافة لاحقة suffix	hope (hopeful - hopeless) / friend (friendly)
اسم فاعل	interesting- exciting - boring - amazing
اسم مفعول	interested- excited - bored - amazed
اسم يستخدم كصفة (لا يجمع الاسم فى هذة الحالة).	world news - school girl - girl school - horse race.
رقم وبعده اسم فيكون الرقم صفة للاسم	a forty-year man - a two-day trip - a ten-day break

لاحظ ان يمكننا عكس الصفة بإضافة بادئه Prefix

ir	dis	il	in	im	un
regular	loyal	legal	correct	polite	lucky
irregular	disloyal	illegal	incorrect	impolite	unlucky

لاحظ عند وضع the قبل الصفة تتحول إلى اسم جمع ويأتي بعده فعل جمع (are - were - have - inf.)

معاق	disabled	غني	rich	فقير	poor
الاغنياء	the rich	الفقراء	the poor	شجاع	brave
		الشجعان	the brave	المعاقين	the disabled

لاحظ أن الصفة بمفردها لا يأتي قبلها (a - an) أما إذا جاءت قبل الاسم المفرد يعد يأتي قبلها (a - an)

✓ This house is new. ✓ It is a new house.
✓ This woman is old. ✓ She is an old woman.

لاحظ الفرق بين الصفة التي تنتهي ed والتي تنتهي ing

نستخدم الصفة التي تنتهي ed كصفة لمستقبل الحدث	bored - excited - amazed - interested
نستخدم الصفة التي تنتهي ing كصفة للمسبب للحدث (تستخدم مع العاقل والغير العاقل للوصف)	boring - exciting - amazing - interesting

لاحظ ترتيب الصفات:

الاسم	material	colour	shape	age	size	opinion	a an the some
	المادة الخام	اللون	الشكل	العمر	الحجم	الرأي	
	iron	red	round	old	small	nice	

✓ I bought a strong big round black wooden table.

يمكننا تقسيم الصفات من حيث القوة إلى نوعين:

❶ صفات عادية (يمكننا ان يأتي قبلها كلمة very)

hot	cold	bad	large	tired	angry

❷ صفات قوية = صفة عادية + very (لا يمكننا ان يأتي قبلها كلمة very)

boiling	freezing	awful	huge	exhausted	furious

✓ He had been working all day. He was very tired (exhausted).
✓ Because of his awful marks, his parents were very angry (furious).

من حيث النوع تنقسم الصفة إلى نوعين:

❶ صفة قصيرة تتكون من مقطع واحد عند اللفظ مثل:

big	slow	short	tall	fast	short

❷ صفة طويلة تتكون من أكثر من مقطع عند اللفظ مثل:

expensive	comfortable	dangerous	valuable	wonderful	important

تنقسم الصفات من حيث الدرجة إلى ثلاث درجات:

❶ الصفة العادية (Positive degree) الغرض منها الوصف وليس المقارنة.

❷ صفة المقارنة (Comparative degree) وتستخدم فى المقارنة بين اثنين.

❸ صفة التفضيل (Superlative degree) صفة التفضيل للمقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين.

Positive degree الصفة العادية

وهي الدرجة العادية أو البسيطة التي تبين الصفة مثل:

lucky	محظوظ	nice	لطيف
happy	سعيد	rich	غني

تستخدم الدرجة البسيطة لكي تعبر عن المساواة فى الصفة.

as صفة as

✓ Toka is as clever as Jana.

✓ Ahmed is as strong as a horse.

تستخدم الدرجة البسيطة لكي تعبر عن عدم المساواة فى الصفة.

not as / so صفة as

✓ Ali is not as clever as Ahmed.

✓ He is not as (so) rich as his brother.

لاحظ انه يوجد طرق اخري للتعبير عن المساواة وعدم المساواة

.... have + the same + اسم + as ......
.... and + ... + have + the same + اسم
.... be similar to ....

✓ Toka is as old as Jana.

= Toka has the same age as Jana.

= Toka and Jana have the same age.

Comparative degree صفة المقارنة

وهي تستخدم عندما نريد إظهار تفوق شخص أو شيء على شخص أو شيء المقارنة بين اثنين وتتكون كالآتي:

صفة قصيرة ⊂ صفة قصيرة + er than ....

✓ Ali is taller than Ahmed.

✓ Ahmed is shorter than Ali.

صفة طويلة ⊂ more صفة طويلة than أكثر من less صفة طويلة than اقل من

✓ Mona is more beautiful than Nada.

✓ Nada is less beautiful than Mona.

Superlative degree صفة التفضيل

وهي تستخدم عندما نريد إظهار تفوق شخص أو شيء على مجموعة من الأشخاص أو الأشياء وتتكون كالآتي:

صفة قصيرة ⊂ the صفة قصيرة + est

✓ Ali is the tallest student in the class.

✓ She is the shortest one.

صفة طويلة ⊂ the most صفة طويلة الأكثر the least صفة طويلة الأقل

✓ Mona is the most beautiful girl I have ever seen.

short adjectives		الصفات القصيرة			
Positive الصفات		**Comparative**		**Superlative**	
happy	سعيد	happier	than	the	happiest
heavy	ثقيل	heavier	than	the	heaviest
old	كبير أو قديم	older	than	the	oldest
pretty	جميل	prettier	than	the	prettiest
quick	سريع	quicker	than	the	quickest
short	قصير	shorter	than	the	shortest
tall	طويل	taller	than	the	tallest

long adjectives		الصفات الطويلة	
Positive الصفات		**Comparative**	**Superlative**
convenient	ملائم	▸ more, less convenient than	▸ the most, least convenient
dangerous	خطير	▸ more, less dangerous than	▸ the most, least dangerous
important	مهم	▸ more, less important than	▸ the most, least important
valuable	قيم	▸ more, less valuable than	▸ the most, least valuable
wonderful	مدهش	▸ more, less wonderful than	▸ the most, least wonderful

بعض الصفات الشاذة				
positive وصف	**comparative مقارنة**		**superlative تفضيل**	
good (right)	better	than	the best	الأحسن
bad (wrong)	worse	than	the worst	الأسوأ
many much	more	than	the most	الأكثر
little	less	than	the least	الأقل
far	farther أبعد	than	the farthest	الأبعد
	further أكثر / إضافي	than	the furthest	

✓ Ali is **better than** Ahmed.

✓ Ahmed is **worse than** Ali.

ملاحظات هامة على الصفات

❶ نضع (er-est) بعد الصفة القصيرة اما إذا انتهي بـ (e) وقبلها حرف ساكن توضع (r-st) فقط اما إذا انتهي بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن تحول إلى (ier- iest) ولاحظ مضاعفة الحرف الاخير فى الصفة إذا انتهت بحرف ساكن وأحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد.

small	▸ smaller than	▸ the smallest
wide	▸ wider than	▸ the widest
heavy	▸ heavier than	▸ the heaviest
big	▸ bigger than	▸ The biggest

❷ يمكن استخدام less قبل الصفة القصيرة:

✓ Ali is **less fat than** Adel.

❸ لاحظ الفرق بين الصفة التي تنتهي ed والتي تنتهي ing

نستخدم الصفة التي تنتهي ed كصفة لمستقبل الحدث

▸ bored - excited - amazed - interested

نستخدم الصفة التي تنتهي ing كصفة للمسبب للحدث (تستخدم مع العاقل والغير العاقل للوصف)

▸ boring - exciting - amazing - interesting

④ يمكن أن نحدد مقدار صفة المقارنة بأن يسبقها كلمات مثل:

much - a lot - a bit - a little - slightly

✓ Toka is **much more** intelligent **than** Jana.

⑤ كلما ....كلما

the + صفة مقارنةمن الدرجة الثانية + فاعل + فعل , **the** + صفة مقارنةمن الدرجة الثانية + فاعل + فعل

✓ **The more** I study hard, **the higher** mark I get.
✓ **The harder** you study, **the more** marks you get.
✓ **The less** you eat, **the thinner** you become.
✓ **The faster** you run, **the earlier** you arrive.

⑥ استعمال صفات المقارنة حالة ثانية بدلاً من صفات التفضيل حالة ثالثة

✓ Mai is **the most** beautiful girl in our family. (No girl)
No girl in our family is **more beautiful than** Mai.

⑦ استعمال قاعدة as ...... as بدلاً من صفات الحالة الثالثة أو العكس.

✓ The Nile is **the longest** river in the word. (as ... as)
No river in the world is **as long as** the Nile.
✓ No man in our village is **as reliable as** Ahmed. (Ahmed ...)
Ahmed is **the most reliable** man in our village.

⑧ استعمال الصفات مع ever

اسم / ضمير is the + صفة حالة ثالثة + اسم + I have ever + p.p

✓ Toka is **the cleverest** girl I have **ever** seen.
✓ Jana is **the most** beautiful girl I have **ever** met.

⑨ استعمال الصفات مع never

I have never + p.p + a / an + اسم + صفة حالة ثانية + than اسم

✓ I have never met a **more** beautiful girl **than** Jana.
✓ I have never met a girl **as** beautiful **as** Jana

the ...adj. .....er of the two ....

✓ Toka **is the taller of the two** girls.

⑩ لاحظ استخدام (most) بدون (the) وهنا تكون بمعني (very):

✓ This novel was **most** interesting.
✓ I love all my family, but my mum **most** of all.

بعد صفات الملكية يستخدم التفضيل (most - least - worst - best) بدون the

✓ His **most** popular book is Giants. ✓ Her **best** novel is "Oliver".

⑪ لاحظ الفرق بين older - elder:

elder + noun than (أكبر من) داخل الأسرة لا تتبع بـ
older + than / **the eldest + noun** (الأكبر)

✓ He is my **elder** brother. ✓ Toka is **older than** Mai.

⑫ لاحظ استخدام الصفة بعد how ولكن الاسم بعد what

How + صفة	How **old**	How **much**	How **heavy**	How **high**	How **tall**
= What + اسم	What **age**	What **price**	What **weight**	What **height**	

⑬ لاحظ استخدام الصفة بعد how ولكن الاسم بعد what

الصفة	young - old	big - small	far - near	expensive - cheap
الاسم	age	size	distance	price

الزتونة
يا تركاااااااااااتك
يا حركااااااااااتك

1) Ali is (much - more) happier than me.
2) Ali is (more - much) intelligent than me.
3) I have as (many - more) books as Mohamed.
4) I have (more - much) money than Ali.
5) I have (less - little) sugar than Ali.
6) I bought as (little - less) sugar as Ali.
7) I looked bad this morning but Mohamed looked (worse - bad).
8) I am tall but Ali is (taller - the tallest).
9) Who is (taller - the tallest) Ahmed or Ali?
10) Ali is (the younger - the youngest) of the two boys.
11) Ali is (the youngest - the younger) of the three boys.
12) Ali is (older - elder) than his brother.
13) My (elder - older) brother is a doctor.
14) She is the (elder - eldest) of the two daughters.
15) She is the (eldest - elder) of the three daughters.
16) I love all my family but I love my father (most - the most).
17) I like all subjects but I like English (best - the best).
18) For (farther - further) information, call me.
19) I am a (much - bit) happier than Ali.
20) Ali is a (good - better) player in this game than me.

5) Adverb الظـــــــرف

نستخدم الظروف لوصف الفعل أو الصفة أما الصفة فتصف اسم

الحال أوالظرف غالباً مشتق من الصفة عن طريق إضافة (y / ly / ily) إلى الصفة:

- quiet ➡ quietly
- slow ➡ slowly
- probable ➡ probably
- quick ➡ quickly
- happy ➡ happily
- easy ➡ easily

للحظ ان الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) تتحول عن طريق : (in a ...... way - manner):

- friendly ودود ➡ in a friendly way - manner

هناك بعض الكلمات تعامل كظرف وكصفة:

hard	جاد / بجد	daily	يومي / يومياً
fast	سريع / بسرعة	weekly	أسبوعي / أسبوعيا
low	منخفض / علي مستوي منخفض	yearly	سنوي / سنويا
high	مرتفع / علي مستوي مرتفع	early	مبكر / فى وقت مبكر
nearby	مجاور/ بالقرب	late	متأخر / فى وقت متأخر
near	قريب / بالقرب	most	كثير من / كثيرا

Wise Saying

A man is known by the company he keeps

إنما يعرف المرء بأقرانه

هناك ظروف غير منتظمة مثل:

good	جيد	➡	well	بشكل جيد
many / much	كثير من	➡	a lot	كثيراً
everyday	يومي	➡	every day	كل يوم
Indoor (outdoor)	داخلي / خارجي	➡	indoors (outdoors)	داخل المنزل / خارج المنزل

أنـــــواع الظـــــرف

- Adverbs of manner — ظرف الكيفية
- Adverbs of place — ظـرف المكان
- Adverbs of time — ظـرف الزمـن
- Adverbs of frequency — ظـرف التكرار
- Adverbs of degree — ظـرف الدرجـة
- Adverbs of affirmation & negation — ظرف الاثبات أو النفي

ظـــروف الكيفيـــة
Adverbs of manner

يصف كيفية حدوث الفعل ويجيب عن السؤال بـ (كيف **How**) يأتي قبل الفعل أو بعد الفعل مثل

✓ How did you do in the exam? - I did very **well**.

✓ What did the police do? - The police **quickly** closed off the area.

well	بطريقة جيده	bravely	بشجاعة	badly	بطريقة سيئة
quickly	سريعاً / بسرعة	slowly	بطيئاً / ببطء	wisely	بحكمة

ظـــروف المكـــان
Adverbs of place

تستخدم ظروف المكان لتحديد مكان أو اتجاه أو بعد حدوث الفعل مثل:

✓ I will meet **her outside**. ✓ There is a big factory **nearby**.

here	هنا	in	في	near	قريباً
there	هناك	out	خارجاً	far	بعيداً
under	تحت	up	أعلى / فوق	abroad	فى الخارج
below	تحت / أدناه	down	أسفل	about	حول / حوالى
between	بين	downstairs	الطابق السفلي	ahead	للأمام
inside	بالداخل	above	فوق / أعلي	around	حول
nearby	مجاور	across	عبر	back	للخلف
outside	بالخارج	away	بعيداً	backwards	للخلف

ظـــروف الزمـــان
Adverbs of time

تشير ظروف الزمان إلى وقت وقوع الحدث وتأتي فى بداية أو نهاية الجملة:

✓ I met him **yesterday**. ✓ I will visit you **soon**.

yesterday	امس	today	اليوم	then	إذن / ثم
tomorrow	غداً	still	لا يزال	since	منذ
now	الآن	soon	حالاً / قريباً	for	لمدة
ago	منذ	every	كل	already	من قبل
before	قبل	last	السابق	early	مبكراً
immediately	فوراً	yet	حتي الأن	late	متأخراً

توضع (**still**) بين الفعل الأصلي والفعل المساعد أما إذا كان الفعل (**be**) فعلاً أساسياً توضع بعده:

✓ She is **still** writing novels. ✓ I am **still** confused.

ظـــروف التكـــرار
Adverbs of frequency

تشير ظروف التكرار إلى مدي تكرار الحدث (عدد المرات) وتأتي فى بداية أو نهاية الجملة أو قبل أو بعد الفعل مثل:

✓ I meet my friend **once** a week.

✓ I visited my uncle **every week** (**weekly**).

every	كل	always	دائما	once	مرة
daily	يوميا	usually	عادة	twice	مرتين
weekly	اسبوعي	often	غالبا	three times	ثلاث مرات
monthly	شهري	sometimes	أحيانا	occasionally	أحيانا
yearly	سنوي	seldom / rarely	نادرا	frequently	غالبا
little	قلما	hardly	بالكاد / بصعوبة	regularly	بانتظام
never	مطلقا			constantly	بشكل ثابت

تستخدم بعض ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأصلي أو بعد (**V. be**):

✓ She is **never** lazy.

✓ I **always** get up early.

ظـــروف الدرجـــة
Adverbs of degree

وهي ظروف توضع قبل الصفة أو الظرف بهدف تحديد الدرجة التي وصلت إليها الصفة وتـاتي قبـل (الفعـل - الصـفة - الحال) مثل:

✓ He spoke **extremely** rudely.

✓ He is **extremely** exhausted.

✓ He **hardly** recognised us.

✓ He is **very** young.

enough	بشكل كافى	extremely	للغاية	fairly	تماما
too	جدا	awfully	بشدة	really	حقا
such	جدا	incredibly	بشكل مذهل	slightly	بشكل طفيف
so	جدا	amazingly	بشكل مذهل	a little	قليلا
just	فحسب / توا	completely	تماما	a bit	قليلا
hardly	بالكاد / بصعوبة	totally	تماما	very	جدا
nearly	تقريبا	absolutely	تماما	rather	إلى حد ما
entirely	كليا	terribly	بشدة	pretty	إلى حد ما
highly	بشكل كبير	almost / nearly	تقريبا	quite	إلى حد ما

للحظ استخدام الظروف التالية قبل الصفات العادية:

very - rather - fairly - quite - extremely - little

✓ Mr Ahmed is a **very** good teacher.

✓ I'm **very** (**extremely**) tired.

للحظ أن **quite / fairly** تعطى معني ايجابي بينما **rather** تعطى معني سلبي :

✓ It is **rather** cold. (I can't bear it.)

✓ It is **quite** cold. (I can bear it.)

للحظ استخدام الظروف التالية قبل الصفات القوية:

absolutely - completely - entirely - totally

✓ The man was **completely** exhausted.

✓ Mr Ahmed is an **absolutely** amazing teacher.

للحظ استخدام الظروف التالية قبل كل من الصفات القوية والضعيفة:

really - pretty

✓ This building is **really big / enormous**.

للحظ استخدام (**enough**) بعد الصفة والظـرف وتعطـي معنـى إيجـابي اما (**too**) تسـتخدم قبـل الصـفة والظـرف وتعطي معنى سلبي:

✓ He is **too weak** to lift this bag.

✓ He is **strong enough** to lift this bag.

الصفات القوية يكون معناها أقوى بكثير من الصفات العادية:

Ordinary عادية	Strong قوية	Ordinary عادية	Strong قوية
Clever ماهر	brilliant رائع	old قديم	ancient عتيق
angry غاضب	furious غضبان جداً	frightening مخيف	terrifying مرعب
bad سيء	terrible فظيع	hot ساخن	boiling فى حالة غليان
big كبير	enormous ضخم	tired متعب	exhausted مرهق
happy سعيد	delighted مسرور	unusual غير عادى	incredible خيالي

ظرف الإثبات او النفي
Adverbs of affirmation & negation

ظروف تستخدم للاثبات أو نفى الحدث:

✓ **Surely**, I will come.

✓ **Indeed**, I hope to come.

yes	نعم / أجل	indeed	واقعا / فى الواقع	not	لا
certainly	يقينا / بالتأكيد	by all means	اطلاقاً	any	أي
surely	بالتأكيد / تأكيداً	undoubtedly	لا شك في	no	كلا
verily	يقيناً / حقاً	obviously	بوضوح	never	أبداً
definitely	بالتأكيد			truly	صدقاً

ظروف المقارنة والتفضيل
Comparative and Superlative Adverbs

يمكن مقارنة الظروف مثل الصفات الطويلة

① The positive adverbs الظروف العادية (المساواه وعدم المساواه)

as + ظرف قصير / ظرف طويل + as

(not) + so / as + ظرف قصير / ظرف طويل + as

✓ Ali speaks French **as well as** Ahmed.

✓ Mona expressed her opinion **as clearly as** she could.

② The comparative adverb ظرف المقارنة

ظرف قصير + than

more + ظرف طويل + than

less + ظرف طويل + than

✓ I know you **better than** him.

✓ We came **rather than** he did.

③ The superlative adverb ظرف التفضيل

the + ظرف قصير (est)

the most + ظرف طويل

the least + ظرف طويل

الظروف الشاذة:

badly - ill	بشكل سئ / بشكل ردئ	worse than	the worst
well	بشكل جيد	better than	the best
much	كثيراً	more than	the most
little	نادراً	less than	the least
late	متأخرا / بتأخر	later than	the latest
far	عن بعد	farther than	the farthest

ملاحظات هامة على الاحوال

❶ عند استخدام الظروف التي تدل على النفى فى بداية الجملة فإن الفعل المساعد يتقدم على الفاعل (صيغة سؤال):

Inversion after negative adverbs			
Seldom	نادراً	▶ Not only......... but also	ليس فقط. ..... بل أيضاً ......
Rarely	نادراً	▶ Scarcely........ when.	لم يكد......... حتى أن. ......
Little	علي الإطلاق	▶ Hardly........... when	لم يكد......... حتى أن. ......
Only when	فقط عندما	▶ No sooner...... than..........	لم يكد......... حتى أن ......
Only then	فى هذه اللحظة	▶ On no account	تحت أى ظرف
Nor	ولا	▶ On no condition	بلا ادني شرط

✓ She **never** visits Luxor. = **Never does** she visit Luxor.

✓ He had **no sooner** studied than he slept.
= **No sooner had** he studied than he slept.

❷ لاحظ استخدام كلمة most / the most :

the most + ظرف / صفة / اسم — **تفضيل (الأكثر)**

✓ Mai is **the most beautiful** girl in the class. ✓ I have **the most money**

most + ظرف / صفة **= very + ظرف / صفة**

✓ This book is **most interesting**. ✓ She behaves **most politely**.

most of all

✓ I like football **most of all** sports. ✓ He likes Hani **most of all** his friends.

مقارنة وتفضيل الأسماء
Comparative and Superlative forms of Nouns

يمكن الاسماء مثل الصفات:

① **The positive nouns** (المساواه وعدم المساواه فى الاسماء)

as + few / many + اسم يعد + as
as + little / much + اسم لا يعد + as

✓ I have **as many books as** Nada. ✓ She has **as little information as** me.

② **The comparative nouns** مقارنة الاسماء

more + اسم يعد / اسم لا يعد + than
fewer + اسم يعد + than
less + اسم لا يعد + than

✓ I have **more books than** Nada. ✓ Nada has **fewer books than** me (I am).
✓ Mai earns **less money than** her sister.

③ **The superlative** تفضيل الاسماء

the most + اسم يعد / اسم لا يعد
the fewest + اسم يعد
the least + اسم لا يعد

✓ Toka got **the most marks**. ✓ Jana did **the fewest exercises**.
✓ Mona had **the least furniture**.

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك

25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) Our football team is .... yours.
ⓐ the better ⓑ better than ⓒ best than ⓓ the best

2) Little Hassan is very clever. He's .... than his friends.
ⓐ intelligenter ⓑ more intelligent ⓒ most intelligent ⓓ intelligentest

3) The Nile is .... river in Africa.
ⓐ longer than ⓑ the longest ⓒ longer one ⓓ longest than

4) My mother's dress is .... than my aunt's.
ⓐ more long ⓑ longest ⓒ longer ⓓ the longest

5) Their house is .... from the main road.
ⓐ the farther ⓑ farther than ⓒ the farthest ⓓ farthest

6) What was the .... event in your life?
ⓐ happiest ⓑ happier ⓒ more happy ⓓ most happy

7) He speaks English as .... as he speaks Arabic.
ⓐ best ⓑ bad ⓒ good ⓓ well

8) Please, tell me something .... than this old joke.
ⓐ interesting ⓑ less interesting ⓒ more interesting ⓓ the most interesting

9) I have .... time than he does.
ⓐ bigger ⓑ least ⓒ most ⓓ less

10) It was .... music I have ever heard.
ⓐ more beautiful ⓑ less beautiful ⓒ the most beautiful ⓓ most beautiful

11) She looked .... and ran away from the dog.
ⓐ fright ⓑ frightened ⓒ frightening ⓓ frighten

12) That's the biggest building I've ....
ⓐ never seen ⓑ ever saw ⓒ ever seen ⓓ never saw

13) I don't think this winter is .... last winter.
ⓐ as cold as ⓑ as cold ⓒ so cold ⓓ colder

14) You need to be .... tall to be a good basketball player.
ⓐ absolutely ⓑ extremely ⓒ completely ⓓ entirely

15) Your problem is not difficult. It's .... than ours.
ⓐ easier ⓑ more easy ⓒ easiest ⓓ most easy

Fill in gap:

16) She is a good cook. She cooks............ .

17) She has .... books than her sister.

18) Mr Ahmed is an .... amazing teacher.

19) After the match, I feel .... exhausted.

20) My father was .... angry when I returned home late.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21) My work is much bad than yours. [..............................]

22) Hossam is in a bad need to do something new as he is boring. [..............................]

23) False friend is bad than open enemies. [..............................]

24) He is the fastest of the two players. [..............................]

25) You can all drink as much so you want. [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) I can't stand this person. He is ....
ⓐ boredom ⓑ bored ⓒ boring ⓓ boringly
2) This man is .... Mr Ali, perhaps taller.
ⓐ as tall as ⓑ so tall so ⓒ as tall so ⓓ so tall as
3) She has been ill, but she certainly .... today.
ⓐ look best ⓑ looks better ⓒ looks best ⓓ is best
4) This pullover is too big. I want a .... one.
ⓐ most small ⓑ more small ⓒ smaller ⓓ smallest
5) All these children are nice, but ours are ....
ⓐ nicer than ⓑ nicest ⓒ the nicest ⓓ the nicer
6) What a pity she lives so far. I wish she lived ....
ⓐ nearest ⓑ nearer ⓒ more near ⓓ most near
7) My bicycle is very nice, but that one is ....
ⓐ the nicest ⓑ more nice ⓒ nicer ⓓ more nicer
8) This car is very good, but ours is ....
ⓐ much better ⓑ more better ⓒ much best ⓓ much best
9) Daniel's is bad, but Brian's is ....
ⓐ much worst ⓑ more worse ⓒ much worse ⓓ worst
10) "Fat" Maggie is not .... she used to be.
ⓐ as fat as ⓑ so fat so ⓒ as fat so ⓓ so fat than
11) I think little Jenny .... today. She can go to school.
ⓐ seem better ⓑ looks better ⓒ seems best ⓓ looks best
12) The man I saw was not .... that one.
ⓐ as tall so ⓑ so tall so ⓒ so tall as ⓓ so tall
13) There was a big crowd. It was .... than ever.
ⓐ crowdest ⓑ more crowded ⓒ most crowded ⓓ crowder
14) My detergent washes much .... than that.
ⓐ more white ⓑ more whiter ⓒ most white ⓓ whiter
15) You have to be much .... than this.
ⓐ most careful ⓑ more careful ⓒ carefulest ⓓ carefuler

Fill in gap:

16) Ahmed looks older .... he is.
17) Summer is .... than winter.
18) He got a .... better than he was yesterday.
19) Never .... she visited Luxor before.
20) Aya is a twenty- .... - old girl.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21) This work is tired. [..............................]
22) The two boys are the same tall. [..............................]
23) I think English is easy. I can study it easy. [..............................]
24) My father was entirely angry when I returned home late. [..............................]
25) Everyday, I get up early to buy bread. [..............................]

3 Advanced Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) My father treats us in .... way.
ⓐ friend ⓑ a friendly ⓒ friendly ⓓ a friend

2) Kareem's exercises are .... of all, in my opinion.
ⓐ better than ⓑ the better ⓒ the best ⓓ best

3) The .... fat you eat, the healthier you become.
ⓐ less ⓑ least ⓒ most ⓓ much

4) I've never seen such a .... film.
ⓐ funniest ⓑ funny ⓒ funnier ⓓ fun

5) The .... fat you eat, the healthier you become.
ⓐ less ⓑ least ⓒ most ⓓ much

6) He likes fish ....
ⓐ a few ⓑ the fewest ⓒ most ⓓ the less

7) Ali is............ of two brothers.
ⓐ tall ⓑ the taller ⓒ the tallest ⓓ taller

8) I think Ahmed is your .... friend.
ⓐ the best ⓑ the better ⓒ better ⓓ best

9) Raise your voice, please. I can .... hear you.
ⓐ hardness ⓑ hard ⓒ hard ⓓ hardly

10) Toka is .... interested in cartoons.
ⓐ few ⓑ many ⓒ the most ⓓ most

11) The more you study, the .... marks you get.
ⓐ less ⓑ good ⓒ better ⓓ best

12) The writer's new book is his .... book.
ⓐ popular ⓑ most popular ⓒ most ⓓ more

13) The shirt wasn't the .... price as I had thought at first.
ⓐ as ⓑ same ⓒ most ⓓ more

14) Ali is a fast runner. I can't run as fast as ....
ⓐ he ⓑ him ⓒ he is ⓓ her

15) He .... to find a job, but he had no luck.
ⓐ tried hard ⓑ tried hardly ⓒ hardly tried ⓓ hard tried

Fill in gap:

16) The movie was really boring. It's the most boring movie I've .... seen.
17) Mona is .... taller than her sister.
18) No sooner .... she watched TV than she slept.
19) Is that size big .... for you, Ali?
20) Which is .... , Cairo or Alexandria?

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21) Going to the club is one of my every day habits. [..............................]
22) The higher you go; the least heat there's in the air. [..............................]
23) The poor needs more care and interest. [..............................]
24) The latest book was Ahmed's the greatest book ever. [..............................]
25) The meeting was very good-organised. It was fruitful [..............................]

أدوات المعرفة والنكرة
6) Definite and Indefinite articles

أدوات النكرة
indifinite articles: A & An

نستخدم a / an = one بمعني وأحد وتأتي قبل اللسم المفرد النكرة (غير محدد)

- نستخدم (a) قبل اللسم المفرد الذي يعد المبدوء بحرف ساكن كتابة ونطق/

▸ a boy - a girl - a man - a woman - a hand - a lion - a bus - a farmer - a university - a uniform - a useful..... - a European.....

- نستخدم (an) قبل اللسم المفرد الذي يعد المبدوء بحرف متحرك كتابة ونطق (a, e, i, o, u):

▸ an orange - an egg - an insect - an apple - an hour - an umbrella - an honest - an squash

الاستخـــــدام

① نستخدم a / an قبل الاسم المفرد عند ذكره لأول مرة يكون نكرة أى غير محدد

✓ I saw a boy playing in the street.

✓ I read a novel in the library.

② نستخدم a / an لنشير إلى الوظائف

✓ He works as a teacher.

✓ She is an engineer.

③ نستخدم a / an لنشير إلى وأحد من عدد أو إلى النوع

✓ I ate an apple.

✓ I bought a pen.

④ نستخدم a / an قبل الجنسيات إذا جاء بعدها اسم مفرد يعد

✓ She is an Egyptian woman.

✓ He is an English man.

⑤ نستخدم a / an قبل الصفات إذا جاء بعدها اسم مفرد يعد

✓ Toka is an intelligent girl.

✓ Ali is a clever boy.

⑥ نستخدم a / an مع تعبيرات السرعة والثمن والنسبة.

▸ Once a day	▸ eighty kilometers an hour
▸ twice a week	▸ sixty meters a minute
▸ Three times a month	▸ twenty pounds a kilo
▸ four times a year	▸ ten pounds a liter

⑦ نستخدم a / an بعد so / such

اسم يعد مفرد + a - an صفة so صفة + اسم يعد مفرد such a - an

✓ He is so honest a boy.

✓ He is such an honest boy.

⑧ نستخدم a / an قبل ادوات التجزئة المفرد

a cup of	فنجان من	a loaf of	رغيف من	a tin of	علبة من
a glass of	كوب من	a bar of	قطعة من	a slice of	شريحة من
a bottle of	زجاجة من	a kilo of	كيلو من	a packet of	لفه من
a jar of	برطمان من	a bag of	كيس من	a sheet of	فرخ من
a pair of	زوج من	a dish of	طبق من	a tube of	أنبوية من

⑨ نستخدم a / an بعد What للتعجب

اسم يعد مفرد + صفة + What a - an

✓ What a hard question!

✓ What a pretty girl.

⑩ نستخدم a / an (عند الاشارة إلى شخص واحد)

✓ She decided to become **a Muslim**.

للاحظ عدم استخدام (a / an) مع:

الأسماء الجمع

✓ They are **clever students**.
✓ I saw **strong men** in the factory.

الأسماء التي لا تعد

✓ Yesterday, we bought **nice furniture**.
✓ I like to gain **information**.

الأسماء المعنوية

✓ **Honesty** is one of his traits.

أداة المعرفة
The definite article: The

نستخدم (**the**) قبل الاسماء التي تعد مفرد أو جمع وايضا مع الاسماء التي لا تعد والاسماء معنوية للتعريف أو للتحديد:

The boy - the boys - the car - the cars - the news - the bread - the money

الاستخدام

① نستخدم **the** عند التعريف بغرض التحديد

✓ **The** little girl who is wearing a dress is Toka.

② نستخدم **the** عند ذكر الاسم مرة ثانية (يكون فى الجملة الاولي نكرة وفى الجملة الثانية معرفة)

✓ She gave me **a present**. **The present** was nice.

③ نستخدم **the** مع الصفة فى الدرجة الثالثة (التفضيل)

the best	the tallest	the biggest	the shortest
the most	the least	the newest	the oldest

④ نستخدم **the** قبل الصفة لتشير إلى الجمع (يأتي بعدهم فعل جمع)

الموتى	the dead	الصغار	the young	الفقراء	the poor
المعاقين	the disabled	كبار السن	the old	الاغنياء	the rich

✓ **The** poor **are** in a bad need to the help of the rich.

⑤ نستخدم **the** مع جمل المقارنة: كلما .... كلما ....

✓ **The more** you study, **the higher** marks you get.

⑥ نستخدم **the** قبل الصفات التي تدل على الجنسية لتدل على الشعب

الشعب الايرلندي	the Irish	الشعب الانجليزي	the English
الشعب الاسباني	the Spanish	الشعب المصري	the Egyptian

⑦ نستخدم **the** مع الأسماء الفريدة من نوعها

السماء	the sky	القمر	the moon	الشمس	the sun
ابو الهول	the sphinx	الارض	the earth	العالم	the world

⑧ نستخدم **the** قبل الآلات الموسيقية بعد أفعال معينة

listen - play - learn - teach

✓ Jana **plays** the guitar.
✓ He **teaches** me the drum.

Wise Saying

Avoiding failure is to avoid progress.
تجنبك للفشل يعني أنك تتجنب التقدم

⑨ نستخدم the مع الاكتشافات و الأختراعات (لكن عند الحديث عن بيع أو شراء أو إصلاح جهاز فلا تأخذ the)

✓ **The computer** is the most useful invitation.
✓ I bought **a computer** yesterday.

⑩ نستخدم the للإشارة إلى الأشياء بشكل عام:

العاصمة	the capital	المحطة	the station	المدينة	the city
السينما	the cinema	الطقس	the weather	النادي	the club

⑪ نستخدم the مع أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات البنوك والفنادق والألقاب:

الملك	the king	الشرطة	the police	الحكومة	the government
اللورد	the lord	الوزارة	the ministry	الصحافة	the press
هلتون	the Hilton	الجيش	the army	الاسطول	the navy

⑫ نستخدم the مع أسماء البلاد المركبة والتي تحتوى على

republic - state - union - kingdom

✓ the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia.
✓ the Republic of China
✓ the United Arab Emirates.
✓ the USA

⑬ نستخدم the قبل سلاسل الجبال والأنهار والبحار والمحيطات والصحاري والجزر والمناطق الجغرافية:

▸ the Red Sea	▸ the Nile	▸ the North Pole
▸ the Mediterranean Sea	▸ the Pacific	▸ the South Pole
▸ the Siwa Oasis	▸ the Alps	▸ the Middle East
▸ Lake Nasser	▸ Cairo University	▸ Mount Everest

للحظ عدم استخدام the مع الدول والقارات والمدن الصغيرة، المدن الكبيرة والبحيرات والخلجان والجبال المفردة وكذلك لا تستخدم مع الشوارع والطرق والميادين والأحياء

⑭ نستخدم the مع التعبيرات الزمنية

▸ in the morning	▸ in the evening	▸ in the afternoon
▸ in the present	▸ in the past	▸ in the future
▸ at night		للحظ ان night لا تأخذ the

⑮ نستخدم the مع الاتجاهات وقبل أسماء الصحف والكتب المقدسة

فى شرق	▸ in the east	شمال..	▸ the north of ...
فى غرب	▸ in the west	جنوب..	▸ the south of ...
جريدة التايمز	▸ the times	الانـجيل	▸ the Bible

⑯ نستخدم the قبل الأماكن عند استخدامها لغير غرضها (إذا كان الذهاب للمكان للغرض الاساسي منه لا نضع the)

✓ She was sent to **prison** because of her crimes.
✓ We went to **the prison** with our father to visit a relative of ours.

⑰ نستخدم the مع الأعداد الترتيبية

▸ the first	▸ the next	▸ the sixties
▸ the second	▸ the last	▸ the seventies

Wise Saying

If you want to live a happy life, tie it to a goal, not to people or objects.

إن أردت أن تعيش حياة سعيدة ، فاربطها بهدف ، وليس بأشخاص أو أشياء

لا نستخدام أداة
No article

عدم استخدام أى أداة (a - an - the) قبل بعض الأسماء

glass - football - love - English - Summer - plastic

Usage الاستخدام

❶ لا نستخدم أى من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) مع الأسماء المجردة المعنوية:

beauty	love	freedom	happiness	peace	evil

❷ لا نستخدم أى من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) قبل الأماكن إذا كان الذهاب للغرض الذي أنشئت من أجله

school	prison	church	university	mosque	hospital

للحظ في حالة اختلاف الغرض نضع the:

✓ We go to school for learning.

✓ He went to the school to ask about his son.

❸ لا نستخدم أى من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) مع الأسماء المعدودة والغير معدودة بوجه عام (جمع يشير للكل)

women	men	animals	birds	water	braed

❹ لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the)مع الألعاب الرياضية والأنشطة بوجه عام وغير محدد

basketball	football	tennis	volleyball	handball

❺ لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the)مع المواد الخام بوجه عام وغير محدد

wood	glass	iron	plastic	wool	silk

❻ لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the)مع أسماء الطعام والشراب بوجه عام وغير محدد

juice	rice	milk	meat	bread	tea

للحظ في حالة التحديد نضع the:

✓ I like to drink tea.

✓ The tea you bought was very tasty.

❼ لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the)مع المواد الدراسية

science	history	English	Arabic	art	chemistry

❽ لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the)مع أسماء اللغات

French	Spanish	Japanese	English	Germen	Arabic

❾ لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the)مع الوجبات بوجه عام وغير محدد

breakfast	lunch	dinner	supper

للحظ في حالة التحديد نضع the:

✓ I always have dinner with my parents.

✓ I invited my friend to the dinner.

❿ لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the)قبل الأيام والشهور وفصول السنة

Spring	Winter	Autumn	Summer	May	Sunday

⓫ لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) قبل اسماء القارات الدول والمدن والأسماء العلم:

Egypt	Africa	Cairo	Ahmed	King Farouk

⓬ لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) مع وسائل المواصلات في حالة وجود حرف الجر by:

✓ He always goes to school by taxi.

للحظ في حالة استخدام حرف الجر in - on نضع بعدهم a - an - the - صفة ملكية.

✓ He always goes to school on a taxi.

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

① England and France are............ European countries.
ⓐ a ⓑ the ⓒ an ⓓ no article

② England is............ European country.
ⓐ a ⓑ an ⓒ no word ⓓ the

③ .... has made the world a smaller place.
ⓐ A plane ⓑ Planes ⓒ The plane ⓓ This plane

④ I had............ exciting day at work last week
ⓐ an ⓑ a ⓒ no article ⓓ the

⑤ He gave a pen and a ruler, but............ pen did not work.
ⓐ a ⓑ an ⓒ the ⓓ no article

⑥ .... lunch we had together was delicious.
ⓐ The ⓑ a ⓒ no article ⓓ an

⑦ .... teachers in my school are kind and helpful.
ⓐ The ⓑ An ⓒ A ⓓ No article

⑧ ....novel I read last week was fun.
ⓐ An ⓑ no article ⓒ The ⓓ A

⑨ He got a job as............ bus conductor.
ⓐ no article ⓑ an ⓒ the ⓓ a

⑩ Nada travelled to............ USA last year.
ⓐ a ⓑ an ⓒ the ⓓ no article

⑪ The Scottish and..........English have a history of conflict.
ⓐ the ⓑ a ⓒ an ⓓ no article

⑫ I saw a little girl, but .... girl didn't know her way.
ⓐ a ⓑ the ⓒ an ⓓ no article

⑬ She has............Italian name.
ⓐ a ⓑ an ⓒ the ⓓ no article

⑭ Scientists think that there is............ link between pollution and cancer.
ⓐ an ⓑ a ⓒ the ⓓ no article

⑮ Cairo is............capital city of Egypt.
ⓐ no article ⓑ a ⓒ an ⓓ the

Fill in gap:

⑯ This is .... first time that tourists have seen the Pyramids.
⑰ Would you like .... glass of juice?
⑱ Amira has a piano. .... piano is new and works well.
⑲ They are talking to............ 8-year old boy called, Ali.
⑳ I read a book, ... book that I read is very nice.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

㉑ He got a job as the engineer. [..............................]
㉒ I met the old man on my way home. The old man was strange. [..............................]
㉓ An exams are always very stressful for us. [..............................]
㉔ My sister enjoys playing a guitar. [..............................]
㉕ A school holidays are starting soon. [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

❶ It's............ United Nations vehicle. There are different ones.
ⓐ the ⓑ a ⓒ no article ⓓ an

❷ He got his degree from............ university in Finland.
ⓐ a ⓑ an ⓒ the ⓓ no article

❸ I'd like to buy a new flat, but............ flats are so expensive.
ⓐ a ⓑ an ⓒ the ⓓ no article

❹ Mr. Hany goes to............ school on foot. He is an active teacher.
ⓐ an ⓑ the ⓒ a ⓓ no article

❺ My uncle arrived on............Sunday after my birthday.
ⓐ an ⓑ the ⓒ a ⓓ no article

❻ You must never look at .... sun.
ⓐ a ⓑ the ⓒ an ⓓ no article

❼ My parents always give me............useful advice before travelling for long hours.
ⓐ number of ⓑ an ⓒ a ⓓ no article

❽ ....youth play important roles in the progress of all nations.
ⓐ No article ⓑ The ⓒ A ⓓ An

❾ Mohammed Salah is one of............ best footballer in the world.
ⓐ no word ⓑ a ⓒ the ⓓ an

❿ They built .... house near the farm as they like the view of plants.
ⓐ a ⓑ an ⓒ the ⓓ no article

⓫ I think the Nile is the longest river in the world. Are there.......... rivers longer than it?
ⓐ a ⓑ an ⓒ the ⓓ no article

⓬ .... are always very stressful for most students.
ⓐ An exams ⓑ Exams ⓒ A exams ⓓ The exams

⓭ .... wonderful picture!
ⓐ What ⓑ What a ⓒ How ⓓ How a

⓮ He asked the librarian to lend him............booklet in front of her.
ⓐ the ⓑ a ⓒ an ⓓ some

⓯ Students at schools must wear............ uniforms.
ⓐ a ⓑ an ⓒ the ⓓ no article

Fill in gap:

⓰ There is............ good book in the library.

⓱ I live in .... Arab Republic of Egypt.

⓲ Who invented .... bicycle?

⓳ Ahmed's father is............ teacher.

⓴ I'm reading............ interesting book.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

㉑ I want the cup of coffee with little sugar. [................................]

㉒ At night, we can see a moon in the sky. [................................]

㉓ I live in an Egypt. [................................]

㉔ I like diving in a Red Sea. [................................]

25 What time is an Maths lesson this afternoon? [..............................]

3 Advanced Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Fear is............ universal weakness.
ⓐ an ⓑ no article ⓒ the ⓓ a

2 Mr Hassan is............better of the two teachers.
ⓐ a ⓑ an ⓒ the ⓓ no article

3 My father always tells me............valuable advice.
ⓐ a ⓑ an ⓒ the ⓓ no article

4 .... supper I had with the American delegation is unforgettable.
ⓐ An ⓑ A ⓒ The ⓓ No Article

5 Egypt has............ unique location in the world.
ⓐ the ⓑ a ⓒ an ⓓ no Article

6 Sara sent me .... SMS just now.
ⓐ a ⓑ an ⓒ the ⓓ no article

7 My sister has a flat on .... 2nd floor.
ⓐ a ⓑ an ⓒ the ⓓ no article

8 I spent .... three-week holiday in Sharm.
ⓐ a ⓑ an ⓒ the ⓓ no article

9 Yesterday, my father bought me.......... useful story. It had useful pieces of advice.
ⓐ an ⓑ a ⓒ the ⓓ no article

10 .... water is essential for all people.
ⓐ A ⓑ An ⓒ The ⓓ No article

11 I like to go to the countryside and enjoy............ beauty of Nature.
ⓐ a ⓑ the ⓒ an ⓓ no article

12 Someone who's broken .... leg finds it difficult to walk.
ⓐ a ⓑ an ⓒ the ⓓ no article

13 Aya studies four hours a day. "a" in this sentence means............ .
ⓐ per ⓑ more than one ⓒ one ⓓ less than one

14 I have made .... new friend recently.
ⓐ the ⓑ a ⓒ an ⓓ no article

15 I have got......... hundred pounds.
ⓐ a ⓑ an ⓒ the ⓓ no article

Fill in gap:

16 This man works for eight hours .... day.

17 It's not safe to live in .... an old house.

18 I went to............school to talk to the headmaster to let my kid leave early yesterday.

19 The radio show host says that .... teenagers are bullied at school.

20 .... window of the flat was broken.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 A subject which I like most is English. [..............................]

22 I finished a homework before I went out. [..............................]

23 Cairo is one of most polluted cities in the world. [..............................]

24 The bananas are 15 pounds the kilo. [..............................]

㉙ Last week, he was talking in a lesson and the teacher was angry with him. [..................]

7) Prepositions حروف الجر

حروف جر مستقلة

هي حروف لها معني
لا ترتبط بكلمة معينة

- حروف جر الزمان
- حروف جر المكان
- حروف جر الوسيلة

حروف جر غير مستقلة

هي حروف مرتبطة بكلمة معينة
سواء كانت اسم / صفة / حال / ضمير

about	عن	down	إلى أسفل	across	عبر	near	قريب
above	فوق	except	ما عدا	after	بعد	over	فوق
in	في	for	لأجل	before	أمام / قبل	past	عبر / بعد / وراء
at	عند	from	من	among	وسط	round	حول
on	على	out	خارج	without	بدون / بلا	since	منذ
to	إلى	in spite of	بالرغم من	between	بين	through	خلال
with	مع	into	إلى الداخل	against	ضد	till	حتى
by	بواسطة	of	من	beyond	ما بعد	up	إلى فوق
behind	خلف	off	بعيدا عن	inside	في الداخل	towards	باتجاه
below	تحت	opposite	مقابل / أمام	outside	في الخارج	under	أدنى
like	مثل	until	لغاية	beside	بجانب		

حـــروف الجـر المستقلـة

A حـــروف جـــر الزمـــان

in	مع فترات اليوم / الشهور / المواسم/ السنين / القرن / أوقات معينة	▶ **in** the morning/ **in** the evening / **in** the afternoon ▶ **in** April / **in** 2019 / **in** the winter / **in** the 8Th century. ▶ **in** the past / **in** the beginning
on	مع الأيام/ التاريخ الكامل	▶ **on** Sunday / **on** December, 25th1985
at	مع الساعة وبعض الفترات الخاصة	▶ **at** six o'clock / **at** noon / **at** midday / **at** midnight **at** night/ **at** the end of
after / before	بعد / قبل	▶ **after** the meeting / **before** six o'clock
during	أثناء	▶ **during** the lesson
between / from... to...	بين /من.... إلي	▶ **between** four **and** six / **from** 2015 **to** 2020

للحظ اللختلاف بين:

on time	في الوقت المحدد بالضبط	**in time**	قبل الوقت

✓ It's better to come **in time**.
✓ Don't worry; the train will arrive **on time**.

Wise Saying

"Optimism is the one quality more associated with success and happiness than any other."
التفاؤل هو الميزة الأكثر ارتباطا بالنجاح والسعادة من أي شيء آخر

B حروف جر المكان

in	مع القارات / الدول / المدن / داخل الأماكن	in Africa / in France / in Luxor / in the school / in a boat / in the flat
on / above	أعلي سطح	on the desk / on the roof / on the island
at	قبل المكان الصغير والتجمعات	at the bus stop / at the back / at the wedding
under / below / beneath	تحت	under the table / below the signature
between / among	بين (مكانين أو أكثر)	between the table and the chair / among people
in front of / behind	أمام / خلف	in front of the door / behind the wall
next to / near / beside / by	بجوار / بجانب	next to the club / near the house / beside the door / by the river
up / down	أعلي / أسفل	up that ladder / down the road
along / opposite	بطول / مقابل	along the beach / opposite the cinema

C حروف جر الوسيلة

by	مع الأشخاص والوسائل	by car / by bus / by taxi / by air / by Nada
in	مع وسائل الموصلات	in a car / in a taxi
on	مع وسائل الموصلات	on a bus / on the ship / on my bike / on foot
with	مع الآلات والوسائل وأجزاء الجسم	with a hammer / with your hand
in	مع اللغات	in French / in Arabic / in English

للحظ اختلاف حروف الجر مع الوسائل:

by - in - on

تستخدم by مع وسائل المواصلات إذا لم يسبقها أداة (the / an / a / صفة ملكية):

✓ I go to school by bus (by car).

تستخدم in مع car / taxi ونستخدم on مع باقي وسائل المواصلات إذا سبقتها أداة (the / an / a / صفة ملكية):

✓ I go to school in the car.

✓ I go to school in a bus.

حروف الجر الغير المستقلة

حروف الجر بعد الأسماء والأفعال والصفات

Grammar

Perpositions after nouns, verbs and adjectives

Prepositions after nouns				حروف الجر بعد الأسماء	
cause of	سبب لـ	increase in	زيادة فى	a solution to	حل لـ
reason for	سبب لـ	decrease in	نقص في	an obstacle to	عائق لـ
the popularity of	شعبية الـ	the matter with	الخطأ فى	damage to	تلف في
the problem of	مشكلة الـ	wrong with	الخطأ فى	an answer to	حل لـ
the aim of	هدف الـ	apology for	اعتذار عن	a reply to	رد على
a supply of	مؤن / إمداد	an effect on	تأثير على	advantage to	ميزة لـ

Prepositions after adjectives حروف الجر بعد الصفات

brilliant at	رائع في	annoyed with	متضايق من (شخص)	responsible for	مسئول عن
bad at	سيء في	furious with	غاضب بشدة من	famous for	مشهور بـ
terrible at	سيء / فظيع في	bored with	يشعر بالملل من	good for	مفيد لـ
wonderful at	رائع في	familiar with	مألوف لـ	ready for	مستعد لـ
good at	ماهر في	angry with	غاضب من (شخص)	qualified for	مؤهل لـ
clever at	ماهر في	disappointed with	خاب أمله	bad for	ضار لـ
hopeless at	ميئوس منه	pleased with	مسرور من	sorry about / for	آسف بشأن
proud of	فخور بـ	delighted with	مسرور من	mad about	مهووس بـ
frightened of	خائف من	crowded with	مزدحم بـ	sad about	حزين بشأن
full of	مليء بـ	satisfied with	راضي عن	excited about	مثار من
scared of	خائف من	dependent on	معتمد علي	worried about	قلق بشأن
terrified of	مرتعب من	keen on	مهتم بـ	happy about	سعيد بـ
ashamed of	خجلان من	rich in	غني بـ	crazy about	مهووس بـ
afraid of	خائف من	interested in	مهتم بـ	curious about	فضولي بشأن
fond of	مغرم بـ	involved in	متورط في	enthusiastic about	متحمس لـ
full of	ممتلئ بـ	kind to (good to)	عطوف مع	well-known to / for	مشهور بـ

في حالة وجود فعل بعد الصفات نستخدم to + inf.:

happy / sad / glad / pleased / lucky / relieved / amazed

✓ It is difficult for her to get up early.

Prepositions after verbs حروف الجر بعد الأفعال

find out about	يعرف عن	search for	يبحث عن	complain to	يشكو لشخص
wonder about	يتساءل بشأن	apologise for	يعتذر عن شيء	belong to	يخص
tell ... about	يخبر شخص عن	hope for	يأمل في	apply to	يتقدم بطلب لشخص
think about / of	يفكر في	blame .. for	يلوم علي	object to	يعترض علي
dream about / of	يحلم بـ	apply for (a job)	يتقدم بطلب لوظيفة	intend to	ينوي
hear about / of	يسمع عن	work for	يعمل لدي	apologise to	يعتذر لشخص
complain about	يشكو من	hear from	يتلقي أخبارا من	get to	يصل إلى
know about	يعرف عن	protect.. from	يحمي من	consist of	يتكون من
talk about	يتحدث عن	suffer from	يعاني من	die of	يموت بسبب
read about	يقرأ عن	result from	ينتج من	accuse of	يتهم بـ
warn about	يحذر من	prevent from	يمنع من	deal with	يتعامل مع
result in	يؤدي إلى	differ from	يختلف عن	rely on	يعتمد علي
succeed in	ينجح في	crash into	يصطدم بـ	depend on	يعتمد علي
believe in	يؤمن بـ	cut down	يقطع (الأشجار)	concentrate on	يركز علي
laugh at	يسخر من	take off	تقلع للطائرة / يخلع ملابسه	go on	يستمر
help in / with	يساعد في	take place in	يحدث	look on	يتصفح الانترنت
go up	يصعد	take part in	يشارك	clear up	يوضح / يحل اللغز

الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعدها to + inf.:

agree	يوافق	threaten	يهدد	promise	يعطي وعد	hope - wish	يأمل
arrange	يرتب	decide	يقرر	refuse	يرفض	fail	يفشل
decide	يقرر	learn	يتعلم	want	يريد	manage	يتمكن
expect	يتوقع	plan	يخطط	offer	يعرض	prepare	يجهز

✓ Toka hopes to be an engineer. ✓ Jana promised to study hard.

حاول أن تفهم وتميز ما يلي جيداً ولاحظ الفرق

Preposition tricks

يا تركيزززززززك
يا حركاااااااااااتك

help	help... + inf.	يساعد	He **helped** me **do** my homework.
	help... to + inf.	يساعد	He **helped** me **to do** my homework.
	help... in+ ing	يساعد في	He **helped** me **in doing** my homework.
	help... with + n	يساعد في	He **helped** me **with my homework**.
turn	turn on	يشغل	**Turn on** the TV. I want to watch the news.
	turn off	يفصل	Always **turn off** devices after use.
	turn down	يقلل / يخفض	It is so cold, **turn down** the air - conditioning, but don't **turn** it **off**.
	turn up	يرفع / يعلي	It is so hot, **turn up** the air-conditioning.
	turn down	يرفض	I asked him to go with me but he **turned down**.
give	give out	يوزع	The food and drink are **given out** to the poor.
	give off	ينتج / يطلق	The fire **gave off** a lot of heat.
	give up	يستسلم / يقلع عن	Never **give up**, whatever hardships you face.
	give away	يتبرع	The children **gave away** their toys for a charity.
trade	trade with	يتاجر مع	We **trade with** China.
	trade in	يتاجر في	We **trade in** / **deal** in vegetables.
hear	hear of / about	يسمع عن	Have you ever **heard of** this writer?
	hear from	يتلقى أخباراً من	My friend traveled abroad and I haven't **heard from** him till now.
angry	angry with	يغضب من	I am **angry with** my friend.
	angry about	يغضب بشأن	I am **angry about** what he has done.
find	found out	يكتشف	I **found out** that I was mistaken.
	find out about	يعرف بشأن	If you want to **find out about** this writer, search Google.
blame	blame... for	يلوم على	He **blamed** me **for** coming late.
	blame....on	يلقي باللوم على	He **blamed** his bad result **on** his bad friend.
run	run out (بدون مفعول)	ينفذ / ينتهي	One day oil will **run out**.
	run out of تحتاج مفعول	ينفذ / ينتهي	We will **run out of** oil.

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The letter I wrote was full............ mistakes.
ⓐ in ⓑ of ⓒ off ⓓ with

2 I don't want to go out yet. I'm waiting .... the mail to arrive.
ⓐ at ⓑ to ⓒ of ⓓ for

3 Ali is looking............ a space to park his car.
ⓐ for ⓑ up ⓒ forward ⓓ after

4 He helped............ the reform of agriculture.
ⓐ at ⓑ in ⓒ of ⓓ to

5 Is Toka happy............ getting the full mark in English?
ⓐ for ⓑ with ⓒ about ⓓ in

6 Have his books been popular............ readers?
ⓐ for ⓑ with ⓒ of ⓓ by

7 He was so bad............ writing exciting stories.
ⓐ for ⓑ at ⓒ to ⓓ on

8 What's the main reason............ the popularity of his books?
ⓐ for ⓑ with ⓒ of ⓓ in

9 Mona loves tennis but she is not very............ on netball.
ⓐ keep ⓑ interested ⓒ keen ⓓ lazy

10 She is most famous............ Egypt.
ⓐ in ⓑ with ⓒ at ⓓ for

11 I'm angry .... my friend because he broke his promise.
ⓐ to ⓑ from ⓒ at ⓓ with

12 When I realized I was wrong. I apologised .... him for my mistake.
ⓐ to ⓑ with ⓒ at ⓓ for

13 A balanced diet is good .... health.
ⓐ for ⓑ in ⓒ at ⓓ about

14 I'm sorry............ forgetting to phone you.
ⓐ by ⓑ with ⓒ to ⓓ for

15 How did she find .... that she had won the prize?
ⓐ about ⓑ out ⓒ from ⓓ of

Fill in gap:

16 All Egyptians are very proud .... this massive engineering project.
17 Are you excited............ going to China?
18 Could you help me............ solving these Maths problems?
19 Samira is very interested............ medicine and wants to be a doctor.
20 The explorers were looking .... diamonds.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 Do you agree on visit my relatives in Luxor? [..............................]
22 His uncle died from cancer two years ago [..............................]
23 There has been an increase by prices lately. [..............................]
24 I must apologize of disturbing you. [..............................]

26 Do you know the cause for his weakness? [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I can't go............ to the fifth floor today. I'm exhausted.
ⓐ down ⓑ through ⓒ up ⓓ at

2 Cutting............ trees causes damage to the environment.
ⓐ in ⓑ of ⓒ away ⓓ down

3 What do you think is the best solution .... the problem?
ⓐ of ⓑ with ⓒ to ⓓ in

4 When I speak Italian, all the others in the class laugh............ me.
ⓐ with ⓑ about ⓒ at ⓓ to

5 My father works............ an international oil company.
ⓐ against ⓑ out ⓒ to ⓓ for

6 Mai is always very kind............ animals.
ⓐ to ⓑ at ⓒ with ⓓ of

7 I felt quite excited as the plane took............ from the airport.
ⓐ up ⓑ on ⓒ off ⓓ at

8 Some people believe .... ghosts.
ⓐ by ⓑ in ⓒ with ⓓ about

9 I'd never heard............ him at all until last week.
ⓐ from ⓑ with ⓒ of ⓓ for

10 This is a difficult period but it won't go............ forever.
ⓐ on ⓑ out ⓒ up ⓓ down

11 Nobody knows the real reason for the film's popularity............ children.
ⓐ with ⓑ to ⓒ for ⓓ of

12 In 1918, millions of people all over the world died............ Spanish flu.
ⓐ of ⓑ for ⓒ at ⓓ with

13 He was arrested trading............ drugs.
ⓐ on ⓑ in ⓒ with ⓓ of

14 You should apologise to your teacher .... forgetting your homework.
ⓐ for ⓑ on ⓒ about ⓓ at

15 Did Aya apply .... that job in the company?
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ for ⓓ in

Fill in gap:

16 I was annoyed............ him for losing my book.
17 What's the reason .... your low grades in Maths?
18 That little black car belongs............ my uncle.
19 There has been an increase .... the number of tourists visiting Egypt this year.
20 My little brother is terrified............ birds.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 She managed of work out the problem in no time. [..............................]
22 Can you help me find an answer of this complicated problem? [..............................]
23 Seif stopped watching the match and turned on the T.V. [..............................]
24 Don't go way. The match will start in ten minutes. [..............................]

25 He usually left us without say a word. [..................................]

3 Advanced Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 They lived .... 22 Baker Street.
ⓐ at ⓑ in ⓒ on ⓓ with

2 He is............ with his new car.
ⓐ proud ⓑ angry ⓒ terrified ⓓ pleased

3 Let's look............ the internet to find out more information about this writer.
ⓐ for ⓑ in ⓒ on ⓓ from

4 I'm looking for his phone number. I haven't heard .... him for ages.
ⓐ of ⓑ for ⓒ at ⓓ from

5 I prefer tea............ coffee.
ⓐ than ⓑ to ⓒ against ⓓ over

6 I really .... to using mobiles while driving.
ⓐ object ⓑ refuse ⓒ disapprove ⓓ hate

7 You don't object .... late tonight, do you?
ⓐ worked ⓑ to work ⓒ working ⓓ to working

8 The detective will .... the mystery of who was responsible for the crime.
ⓐ get up ⓑ clear up ⓒ make up ⓓ give up

9 The popularity .... Mohammed Salah has increased recently.
ⓐ with ⓑ from ⓒ of ⓓ to

10 The careless student blamed his failure .... his mother.
ⓐ with ⓑ for ⓒ on ⓓ about

11 My uncle died............ the age of Sadat.
ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ by

12 We could run out .... oil in the next twenty years.
ⓐ of ⓑ from ⓒ with ⓓ in

13 I am looking forward .... from you soon.
ⓐ to hear ⓑ to hearing ⓒ on hearing ⓓ with hearing

14 He promised .... all his lessons.
ⓐ to study ⓑ to studying ⓒ studying ⓓ study

15 Mo Salah is best known............ the happiness maker.
ⓐ for ⓑ as ⓒ to ⓓ like

Fill in gap:

16 I succeeded .... sending that e-mail at six o'clock p.m.

17 There are plans .... rescuing the important monuments.

18 In the past, many people used to die........common diseases that we can easily treat.

19 Do you think life today is different .... life in the past?

20 I was disappointed .... him for being lazy.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 Don't forget to turn the lights of when you leave. [..................................]

22 Do not go close for that dog. It is not friendly. [..................................]

23 He walked for a long time till he finally got at his destination. [..................................]

㉔ That little scientist worked in developing the new vaccine. [..............................]
㉕ When I passed my final exam, I was up the moon. [..............................]

3 العبـــارة The clause

العبارة مجموعة من الكلمات لا تؤدي معنى كاملاً، وبها فاعل و فعل محدد (أي أنّها جملة ناقصة المعنى).

When he arrived .... / ......because he was tired.

4 شبـه الجملة The phrase

شبة الجملة هي مجموعة من الكلمات ليس لها معنى كامل وليس بها فاعل و لا فعل محدد.

Reaching home,..... / ... in the corner ....

5 الجمـــلة The sentence

وتنتهي بنقطة (.) أو بعلامة استفهام (؟) أو علامة تعجب (!) تبدأبحرفٍ كبير

هي عبارة عن مجموعة من الكلمات لها معنى تام وتحتوى على فعل محدد بفاعل وتنقسم إلى ثلاثة أنواع هي

❶ A simple sentence الجملة البسيطة	هي جملة تحتوي علي فعل واحد فقط وله معني واحد تام ▶ He eats fish. ▶ She did her homework.
❷ A compound sentence الجملة المركبة	هي جملة تحتوي علي أكثر فعل. تتكون من جملتين بسيطتين مربوطتين بحرفِ عطف وله معنيان كاملان تامان. ▶ He ate fish and drank juice. ▶ Both Ali and Ahmed are clever.
❸ A complex sentence الجملة المعقدة	تتكون من جملتين بسيطتين أو أكثر، مربوطة بأداة ربط مناسبة، وتحتوي على فعلين محدودين وتعطي معنى واحد فقط. ▶ If you succeed, I'll buy you a car. ▶ He didn't go to school because he was ill.

Kinds of Sentences أنـــواع الجمـــل

Statement الجملـــة الخبريـــة
Order الجملـــة الأمريـــة
Exclamation التعجـــــب
Question الســــؤال

(A) Statement الجملة الخبرية

الجملة الخبرية تُعطي معلومة ما، وتكون إما مثبتة أو منفية.

1 Subject الفاعـــل
2 Verb الفعـــل
3 Complement تكملة الجملة

1 Subject الفاعـــل

هو من يقوم بالفعل وقد يكون:

اسم	▶ Cairo is a big city.	▶ Lions eat meat.	▶ Ali plays tennis.

ضمير فاعل	▸ **He** is tall.	▸ **She** studies hard.	▸ **They** have a house.
ضمير ملكية	▸ **It** isn't my car. **Mine** is red.	▸ My bag is big but **hers** is small.	
ضمير غير محدد	▸ **Someone** robbed this bank.	▸ **Everybody** seeks to make money.	
ضمير إشارة	▸ **This** is a book.	▸ **These** are my son.	▸ **That** was a bus.
صفة	▸ **The poor** live a miserable life.	▸ **The disabled** need care.	
صفة ملكية + اسم	▸ **My** father is a teacher.	▸ **Our** house is very big.	
صفة إشارة + اسم	▸ **This** car is very old.	▸ **That** building is huge.	
There	▸ **There** is a boy coming.	▸ **There** were people crying yesterday.	
عبارة اسمية	▸ **The owner of the building** is a very kind person.		

2 Verb الفعـــــــــل

الفعل عبارة عن كلمة تستخدم للتعبير عن حركة أو حالة أو حدث ويأتي بعد الفاعل ويمكن من خلاله تحديد زمن الجملة:

✓ He **works** hard. ✓ I **will take** you with me. ✓ I **am eating pasta** now.

للحظ أن الفعل يتبع الفاعل من حيث المفرد والجمع

❶ اذا كان الفاعل جمع يأتي بعده فعل جمع (**are - were - have - infinitive**)

❷ اذا كان الفاعل جمع يأتي بعده فعل مفرد (**is - was - has - v+s**)

Types of verbs أنـــــواع الفعــــل

Simple verb
فعــــل بسيـــــط
هو فعل مكون من جزء واحد فقط و يسمي
Main verb

Compound verb
فعــــل مركـــــب
هو فعل مكون من جزأين أو أكثر
Helping verb + Main verb

Helping Verbs الأفعـــال المساعـــدة

Verb to be
مجموعة أفعال يكون

Verb to have
مجموعة أفعال يمتلك

Verb to do
مجموعة أفعال يفعل

Modal verbs
الأفعــــال الناقصــــة

سبق شرحهم

3 Complement تكملة الجملة

تكملة الجملة وتأتي بعد الفاعل والفعل (و لا يشترط وجود تكمله قد يكون فعل للزم) قد تكون

اسم	▸ I saw **Ali**.	▸ He is **a doctor**.	
	▸ I fixed the **table**.	▸ She bought **a dog**.	
ضمير مفعول	▸ I met **her**.	▸ Aya called **us**.	▸ We will invite **them**.
ضمير غير محدد	▸ I saw **someone** near our flat.	▸ I didn't find **anyone** in the club.	
صفة	▸ We should help **the poor**.	▸ They are **clever**.	
ظرف زمان	▸ I traveled **yesterday**.	▸ He came **early**.	
ظرف مكان	▸ I lived **here** last year.	▸ Aswan is a quiet city. I was born **there**.	
ظرف كيفية	▸ They ran **quickly**.	▸ She spoke **loudly**.	
صفة ملكية + اسم	▸ I saw **my** friends.	▸ We sold **our** car.	▸ Ali met **his** relatives.

صفة إشارة + اسم
- I met **that** person before.
- I like **this** colour.

(B) Order الجملة الأمرية

هي جملة تبدأ بفعل أساسي في المصدر في حالة الإثبات و**Never** - **Don't** وبعدهما المصدر في حالة النفي

✓ **Never** come late again. ✓ **Don't waste** your time. ✓ **Open** the door.

(C) Exclamation التعجب

هي جملة لا ترتبط بتكوين معين أو ثابت وهدفها التعبير عن التعجب

✓ How wonderful it is! ✓ Oh! What a lie! ✓ How kind of you!
✓ How silly they are! ✓ What lovely eyes she has! ✓ What a fool he is!

(B) Question السؤال

How to make a question?

السؤال بفعل مساعد | السؤال باستخدام أداة استفهام | السؤال المذيل

1 السؤال المبدوء بفعل مساعد أو ناقص
A question with Yes / No & answer

هو السؤال الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد وتكون إجابته بـــ **Yes** or **No** أو ما يساويهما

بعدهم	الماضي	المضارع	الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة
V+ ing	was	am - is	**V. be**
	were	are	
P.P	had	have - has	**V. have**
Inf.	did	do - does	**V. do**
	would	will	**Modal verbs**
	should	shall	
	could	can	
	might	may	
	had to	must	
	had to	have to - has to	

كيفية عمل السؤال باستخدام الأفعال المساعدة

إذا كان فى الجملة أي من الأفعال المساعدة السابقة يتم تقديم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل "**طريقة المقص**".

إذا لم يوجد بالجملة فعل مساعد أو ناقص نستخدم ما يلي:

إذا كان فعل الجملة في المصدر (**بدون أي إضافات**) مع الفاعل الجمع	go / visit	**do**
إذا كان فعل الجملة منتهى بـ (**s / es/ ies**) مع الفاعل المفرد	goes/ visits	**does**
إذا كان فعل الجملة منتهى بـ (**d /ed/ ied**) أو فعل ماضى غير منتظم	went / visited	**did**

يتم حذف الــ **,Yes** من الجملة ومع **No**, يتم حذف الـ **n't**.أما إذا وجد **No** بعدها جملة مثبتة يتم عكس السؤال.

Test yourself

Change the following sentences into questions

1 Yes, they are playing tennis.
✎ ....

2 Yes, he is a teacher.
✎ ....

3 Yes, they've got their books.
✎ ....

4 No, she hasn't got her doll.
✎ ....

5 No, he wasn't at Cairo yesterday.
✎ ....

6 Of course, Eman is studying Maths now.
✎ ....

7 No, I'm not listening to music.
✎ ....

8 Sorry, he wasn't at school.
✎ ....

9 Sure, it is my favourite toy.
✎ ....

10 Yes, I'm ten years old.
✎ ....

11 Certainly, this is my pencil.
✎ ....

12 Yes, we have Maths every day.
✎ ....

13 Yes, they always go to Alex.
✎ ....

14 Yes, Ali and Ahmed meet once a week.
✎ ....

15 Yes, Mona collects stamps.
✎ ....

16 Yes, she has a car.
✎ ....

17 Sure, he saw me buying the books.
✎ ....

18 No, I managed to solve it.
✎ ....

19 Yes, Jana does her homework every evening.
✎ ....

20 Yes, they had eggs and toast for breakfast in the morning.
✎ ....

21 Yes, Aya went to the cinema.
✎ ....

22 No, I didn't have meat and rice for lunch.
✎ ....

23 No, he never won a prize.
✎ ....

2 السـؤال المذيـل
Question Tag

- السؤال المذيل عبارة عن سؤال قصير يضاف في نهاية الجملة الخبرية لزيادة التأكيد ومعناه "أليس كذلك" أو "هل أنا علي صواب".
- يتكون السؤال المذيل من فعل مساعد وضمير فاعل طبقاً لفاعل الجملة.
- إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة يكون السؤال المذيل منفياً والعكس.
- يكون دائماً الجزء الثاني ضمير فاعل ولا يمكننا استخدام الأسماء. إذا جاء اسم مذكر عاقل يحول (**he**) إذا جاء اسم مؤنث عاقل يحول (**she**) واسم غير عاقل مفرد (**it**) والجمع عاقل أو غير عاقل إلى (**they**).
- للحظ عدم تحويل (**I**) إلي (**you**) والعكس في السؤال المذيل.

?ضمير فاعل +فعل مساعد منفي ,....... فعل مثبت + فاعل
?ضمير فاعل +فعل مساعد مثبت ,....... فعل منفي + فاعل

✓ Jana is a clever girl, **isn't she**?
✓ Dalia has typed the letters, **hasn't she**?
✓ Ali won't be late, **will he**?
✓ I shall visit you, **shan't I**?

- فى حالة عدم وجود فعل مساعد نستخدم (**do / does / did**) حسب زمن فعل الجملة.

✓ They **came** by car, **didn't they**?
✓ Toka **speaks** English well, **doesn't she**?
✓ People **like** making money, **don't they**?

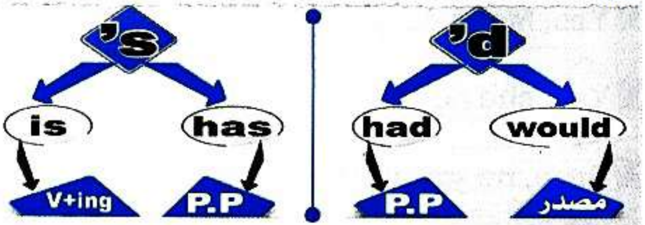
- للحظ الاجابة علي السؤال (أولوية الإجابة للجملة المثبتة **Yes** والجملة المنفية **NO**)

Mona is sick, isn't she?	The boys never liked dancing, did they?
▶ **Yes**, she is.	▶ **Yes**, they did.
▶ **No**, she isn't.	▶ **No**, they didn't.

- الكلمات الآتية **neither / no longer / rarely / hardly / seldom / never / little / few** تعبر عن النفى ولذلك يكون السؤال المذيل مثبتاً.

✓ I will **never** speak to her again, **will I**?
✓ They **rarely** visit Japan, **do they**?

- للحظ الاختصارات الآتية:



✓ I'**d** rather have tea, **wouldn't I**?
✓ We'**d** like to eat fish, **wouldn't we**?
✓ You'**d** better stay in bed, **hadn't you**?
✓ It'**s** stopped raining, **hasn't it**?
✓ It'**s** running fast, **isn't it**?

- إذا كـان الفاعل (**anyone / someone /somebody / everyone /everybody / no one nobody anybody**) نستخدم (**they**) في السؤال المذيل مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي:

✓ **Everybody** has finished the test, **haven't they**?
✓ **No one** is here, **are they**?

- إذا كان الفاعل (**something / nothing / anything / everything**) نستخدم (**it**) في السؤال المذيل مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي:

✓ **Something** stops me, **doesn't it**?
✓ **Nothing** can change the fact, **can it**?

1- لاحظ استخدام (had / has / have) في السؤال المذيل

إذا كان (**has / have / had**) فعل مساعد فتستخدم هذه الأفعال في السؤال المذيل مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي:

✓ I **haven't** finished my homework yet, **have I**?
✓ Mona **has** never studied her lessons, **has she**?
✓ The children **had** been to their school, **hadn't they**?

إذا كان فعل الجملة (**has / have / had**) كفعل أساسي بمعني يملك يمكن استخدام(**has / have / had**) أو (**do / does / did**) ولكن يفضل(**do / does / did**) مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي:

✓ I **have** a camera, **don't I (haven't I)**? ✓ He **has** a camera, **doesn't he (hasn't he)**?
✓ He **had** a camera, **didn't he (hadn't he)**?

إذا كان فعل الجملة (**had / has / have**) كفعل أساسي بمعني آخر غير يملك نستخدم فقط (**do / does / did**) مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي:

✓ I **have** a letter from my uncle, **don't I**?
✓ Ahmed **has** a cup of tea, **doesn't he**? ✓ Toka **had** lunch at home, **didn't she**?

في حالة وجود (**has to / have to / had to**) نستخدم فقط (**do / does / did**) في السؤال المذيل مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي:

✓ I **have to** leave now, **don't I**? ✓ Aya **has to** work hard, **doesn't she**?
✓ Lions **had to** be kept in cages, **didn't they**?

2- لاحظ تكوين السؤال المذيل في حالة وجود جملتين

اذا احتوت الجملة الأساسية علي فعل من أفعال الرأي مثل (**I think/I believe/I hope/I expect** /......) يوضع السؤال المذيل علي الجملة الثانية ولكن مع مراعاة أن الجملة الأولي تؤثر من ناحية الإثبات والنفي:

✓ I believe it'**s** going to rain, **isn't it**?
✓ I don't think Ali **will** win the match, **will he**?
✓ I expect Mai **never tells** lies, **does she**?

فى حالة وجود أداة ربط (**if - after - when**....) فإن السؤال المذيل يتبع الجملة التى لا تحتوى على أداة الربط. مع مراعاة أن الجملة الأولي لا تؤثر من ناحية الإثبات والنفي:

✓ **When** he came home late, my dad **wasn't** happy, **was he**?
✓ I'**ll** help you if you ask, **won't I**?

Test yourself

1) He isn't friendly, ...?
2) Ali's gone home, ...?
3) This water's hot, ...?
4) You said goodbye, ...?
5) Everyone saw her, ...?
6) I am tired, ...?
7) It liked meat, ...?
8) He has a new car, ...?
9) They won't go with us, ...?
10) This shop's very expensive, ...?
11) Few people saw the criminal, ...?
12) I don't think Jana will pass, ...?
13) We had to stay at a hotel, ...?
14) You'd better have fruits, ... ?
15) I had a serious disease, ... ?
16) Lions like eating meat, ... ?
17) Nada set the table, ... ?
18) You haven't met Aya, ... ?
19) Jana didn't arrive yesterday, ... ?
20) Toka never read this novel, ... ?
21) No one could recongise him, ... ?
22) Nothing can be achieved, ... ?
23) Ali and Hani met again, ... ?
24) He is too heavy to play, ... ?
25) A few people arrived, ... ?
26) Little money was lost, ... ?

1 You'll come with us, ...?
ⓐ will you ⓑ you will ⓒ won't you ⓓ don't you

2 You go to London every day, ... you?
ⓐ don't ⓑ won't ⓒ can't ⓓ aren't

3 She doesn't live here, ... she?
ⓐ doesn't ⓑ will ⓒ does ⓓ did

4 I don't think he will visit us, ... he?
ⓐ do ⓑ will ⓒ won't ⓓ don't

5 You aren't very tall, ... you?
ⓐ aren't ⓑ are ⓒ do ⓓ have

6 There's a lot of coffee, ... there?
ⓐ aren't ⓑ isn't ⓒ hasn't ⓓ doesn't

7 You' d like to go, ... you?
ⓐ didn't ⓑ wouldn't ⓒ would ⓓ won't

8 They won't come yet, ... they?
ⓐ won't ⓑ will ⓒ would ⓓ do

9 Jenny's in Italy, ... she?
ⓐ doesn't ⓑ isn't ⓒ aren't ⓓ hasn't

10 Mona has never studied her lessons, ... she?
ⓐ does ⓑ has ⓒ hasn't ⓓ doesn't

11 You wanted to go, ... you?
ⓐ do ⓑ did ⓒ aren't ⓓ didn't

12 They've got a dog, ... they?
ⓐ haven't ⓑ have ⓒ do ⓓ will

13 You come here often, ... you?
ⓐ come ⓑ do ⓒ don't ⓓ haven't

14 They'll tell you tomorrow, ... they?
ⓐ won't ⓑ tell ⓒ will ⓓ don't

15 Alison, you'd like to go on this trip, ... you?
ⓐ didn't ⓒ would ⓒ wouldn't ⓓ won't

16 Martha's in the U.S.A., ... she?
ⓐ doesn't ⓑ isn't ⓒ aren't ⓓ hasn't

17 Nothing can change the fact, can ....?
ⓐ them ⓑ nothing ⓒ they ⓓ it

18 There were a lot of people, ... there?
ⓐ were ⓑ weren't ⓒ aren't ⓓ hasn't

19 You have been to London before, ... you?
ⓐ don't ⓑ have ⓒ haven't ⓓ aren't

20 It's very crowded in here, ... ?
ⓐ isn't there ⓑ isn't it ⓒ is there ⓓ is it

21 He drank milk, ... ?
ⓐ didn't it ⓑ isn't it ⓒ didn't he ⓓ doesn't he

22 She went to the U.S.A. last year, ...?
ⓐ doesn't she ⓑ doesn't it ⓒ didn't she ⓓ weren't she

23 He eats meat every day, ... ?
ⓐ doesn't it ⓑ doesn't he ⓒ isn't it ⓓ isn't he

24 Everybody has finished the test, haven't ....?
ⓐ she ⓑ he ⓒ it ⓓ they

3 السـؤال بـأداة أستفهـام
Wh Question

هو السؤال الذي يستخدم فيه أداة استفهام للسؤال عن شيء محدد وتختلف الإجابة باختلاف أدوات الاستفهام:

❶ تحديد وحذف الإجابة المطلوب السؤال عنها (مثل **when** يتم حذف (**حرف الجر + الزمن**).

❷ حدد الفعل المساعد بالجملة وان لم تحتوي علي فعل مساعد نأتي بـ **do / does / did**.

❸ حدد الضمائر التي يتم تحويلها مثل **we** إلي **you**.

❹ في حالة استخدام **who** للسؤال عن الفاعل نحذف الفاعل وتبقى الجملة كما هى.

❺ أما إذا استخدمت **who** للسؤال عن مفعول نطبق صيغ السؤال بتقديم الفعل المساعد علي الفاعل.

تكوين السؤال:

أداة استفهام + فعل مساعد + فاعل + فعل + باقي السؤال + ?

خد بالك لاحـــظ...أدوات الاستفهـــام

تقسم أدوات الاستفهام إلي:

متى نستخدمها ؟	المعنى	أداة الاستفهام	N
أدوات استفهام أساسية			
تسأل عن: المفعول / الفعل / الحدث	ما/ ماذا؟	What	1
تسأل عن: الفاعل (شخص)	من ... ؟	Who	2
تسأل عن: الشيء الغير عاقل	أي ... ؟	Which	3
تسأل عن: المكان	أين ... ؟	Where	4
تسأل عن: الزمان	متى ... ؟	When	5
تسأل عن: السبب والإجابة because - to - for	لماذا ... ؟	Why	6
تسأل عن: الحال أو الطريقة أو الوسيلة	كيف.. ؟	How	7
تسأل عن: الملكية	ملك من.. ؟	Whose	8
أدوات استفهام فرعية			
تسأل عن: اللون (للتخيير Which colour)	ما لون؟	What colour	9
تسأل عن: الوقت المحدد	في أي وقت؟	What time	10
تسأل عن: المقاس	ما مقاس؟	What size	11
تسأل عن: السن أو العمر	كم العمر ؟	How old = (What age)	12
تسأل عن: الارتفاع	كم ارتفاع ؟	How high = (What height)	13
تسأل عن: العدد	كم عدد؟	How many	14
تسأل عن: الطول / شجر / أبراج / إنسان	ما طول؟	How tall = (What height)	15
تسأل عن: الكمية أو الثمن	ما كمية / كم ثـمن؟	How much = (What price)	16
تسأل عن: عدد مرات عمل الشيء	كم مرة؟	How often = (How many times)	17
تسأل عن: المدة	ما المدة؟	How long = (What length)	18
تسأل عن: العمق	ما عمق؟	How deep = (What depth)	19
تسأل عن: السرعة	كم سرعة؟	How fast = (What speed)	20
تسأل عن: الحرارة	ما حرارة؟	How hot = (What heat)	21
تسأل عن : المسافة	ما المسافة؟	How far = (What distance)	22

Test yourself

Change the following sentences into questions

① They **sometimes** go to **the club**. (Where) (How often)

✎ ....

② **Nada** plays **tennis every Sunday**. (What) (Who) (When)

✎ ....

③ **Jana** swims with **Toka** in **the swimming pool**. (Who) (Who) (Where)

✎ ....

④ **Ahmed** travels **to Aswan by train.** (Who) (Where) (How)

✎ ....

⑤ **Nada** washes **the dishes in the evening.** (Who) (When) (What)

✎ ....

⑥ I play **squash three times a week**. (How often) (What)

✎ ....

⑦ They are travelling **to Luxor by plane**. (Where) (How)

✎ ....

⑧ **Farouk** is going to the bank **to get some money**. (Who) (Why)

✎ ....

⑨ **The king** lived **in a big castle**. (Who) (Where)

✎ ....

⑩ He saw a nice film on TV at **ten o'clock yesterday**. (What) (When)

✎ ....

⑪ I went to the supermarket to buy some groceries. (Where) (Why)

✎ ....

⑫ We ate fish and rice yesterday. (When) (What)

✎ ....

⑬ Mona watered the flowers this morning. (What) (When) (Who)

✎ ....

⑭ Ahmed will fix his car tomorrow. (When) (Who) (What)

✎ ....

⑮ They will visit the Egyptian museum tonight. (When) (What)

✎ ....

⑯ Jana will go to school on foot. (Where) (Who) (How)

✎ ....

⑰ I travel to Paris twice a year. (How often)

✎ ....

⑱ I have studied English for three hours. (How long)

✎ ....

⑲ These shoes are 45 and they are E.L 200. (What size)(How much)

✎ ....

⑳ Linda lives with her parents. (Whom) (Who)

✎ ....

㉑ You should study hard to achieve your goals. (Why) (What)

✎ ....

㉒ I drank three cups of tea in the cafe. (How many) (Where)

✎ ....

Tenses الأزمنــــــــة

تنقسم الأزمنة إلى ثلاثة أقسام رئيسية:

Present المضارع

Past الماضي

Future المستقبل

ولكل قسم من هذه الأقسام الثلاثة أربعة فروع كما يلي:

Present	Past	Future
Present simple	Past simple	Future simple
Present continuous	Past continuous	Future continuous
Present perfect	Past perfect	Future perfect
Present perfect continuous	Past perfect continuous	Future perfect continuous

المضارع البسيط
المضارع المستمر

Grammar
Present simple
Present Continuous

زمن المضارع البسيط
The Present Simple Tense

Formation التكويـــن in Active

يتكون من التصريف الأول للفعل بدون إضافة مع (They / You / We / I / فاعل جمع)

و إضافة (s- es - ies) للفعل مع (It / She / He / فاعل مفرد)

نضيف للفعل (es) إذا انتهي بـ: (x - o - ss - sh - ch)

نضيف للفعل (ies) إذا انتهي بـ y مسبوقا بحرف ساكن وتحذف y

watches	goes	brushes	dresses
carries	studies	cries	tries

✓ I **play** football on Fridays.
✓ He **plays** football on Fridays.
✓ They **watch** films at home.
✓ Jana **watches** films at home.

Formation التكويـــن in Passive

Object + (am / is / are) + P.P

✓ Football **is played** on Fridays.
✓ Films **are watched** at home by Jana.

Negative النفـــي

يتكون الجملة في النفي مع (They / You / We / I / فاعل جمع) من (don't +inf. ،never +inf.)

✓ I **don't play** football on Fridays.
✓ They **never watch** films at home.

يتكون الجملة في النفي مع (It / She / He / فاعل مفرد) من (doesn't +inf. / never +inf. + s)

✓ He **doesn't play** football on Fridays.
✓ Jana **never watches** films at home.

Question الســؤال

يتكون السؤال بمعني هل في المضارع البسيط من:

Do ـ Doesالفاعل inf. .... ?

مع (They / You / We / I / فاعل جمع) نستخدم(Do) مع (It / She / He / فاعل مفرد) نستخدم (Does).

- يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في المضارع البسيط من:

اداة استفهام do - does الفاعل inf. .... ?

✓ What do you do on Fridays?
✓ What does Jana watch at home?
✓ When do you play football?
✓ Where does Jana watch films?

Key words الكلمات الدالة

- تأتي أظرف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد V. be
- يمكن أن تأتي أظرف التكرار في بداية الجملة أو نهايتها

always	دائماً	Seif always cries when he is hungry. Toka is always tired in the evenings.
usually = be used to + V + ing	عادة	Jana usually gets up early. Jana is used to getting up early.
often	غالباً	She often eats pasta.
sometimes	أحياناً	I sometimes walk to school.
rarely - seldom - scarcely	نادراً	He rarely comes late.
never	أبداً	I never drive into town. I am never late for school.
ever	حتى الآن (في السؤال)	Do you ever drive a car?
every.......	كل	Every Friday, Jana goes to the club.
now	الآن (في هذه الأيام)	I work as a teacher now. حدث غير مستمر أثناء الكلام
still	ما زال	She is still smart.

- تعبر الكلمات التالية عن النفي never / rarely / seldom / scarcely / hardly وتأتي قبل الفعل أما إذا كانت أول الجملة يأتي بعدها فعل مساعد (صيغة السؤال).

✓ She never tells lies.
✓ I seldom see my uncle.

☛ Never does she tell lies.
☛ Seldom do I see my uncle.

Usage الاستخدام

❶ يستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق.

✓ The earth goes round the sun.
✓ Water boils at 100° Centigrade..

❷ يستخدم للتعبير عن عادات في المضارع.

Usually = (be) in the habit of + inf. + ing = (be) used to + inf. + ing

✓ Jana usually gets up early.
= Jana is used to getting up early.
= Jana is in the habit of getting up early.

- تستخدم no longer بمعنى (لم يعد) بدلا من used to ويأتي بعدها الفعل في المضارع البسيط:

✓ Toka used to live in Cairo. (no longer)
= Toka no longer lives in Cairo.

- تستخدم any more / any longer بدلاً من used to مع نفي الفعل في المضارع البسيط وتأتى في نهاية الجملة:

✓ Toka used to live in Cairo. (any more / any longer)
Toka doesn't live in Cairo any more / any longer.

- للحظ فعل الجملة الثانية: جملة التعقيب بعد but now تكون مضارع وعكس الجملة الأساسية ويستخدم do - does إذا كان فعل الجملة ليس V. be أما إذا كان V. be نستخدم am - is - are :

✓ She used to get up early, but now she doesn't.

- ✓ I **used to play** with children but now I **don't**.
- ✓ She used to be active, but now she **isn't**. ✓ I **used to be** rich but now I **am** poor.

③ يستخدم للتعبير عن الأعمال المتكررة والمواقف الدائمة .

- ✓ Amr **travels** to work by train every day. ✓ She **works** as an engineer.
- ✓ Toka never **gets** up early.

④ يستخدم مع الروابط الزمنية في المضارع عندما تكون الجملة الثانية تعبر عن المستقبل.

- ✓ After my father **finishes** his work, he **will take** us to the club.
- ✓ As soon as Mr. Ahmed **finishes** this book, he **will do** a pilgrimage.
- ✓ I **won't** come until you **call** me.

⑤ يستخدم مع **if** الحالة الأولى والصفرية.

- ✓ If you **study** hard, you **will succeed** in your exams.
- ✓ If you **heat** water, it **boils**.

⑥ يستخدم مع الجداول الزمنية في المستقبل وجداول المواعيد.

- ✓ The lesson **starts** at 7 o'clock. ✓ The plane **takes** off at 2 o'clock.

⑦ يستخدم للتعبير عن عدد مرات القيام بالحدث

- ✓ I get up at 8 o'clock **every morning**. ✓ How **often** do you go to the dentist?
- ✓ Julie doesn't drink tea very **often**.
- ✓ He **usually** goes away two or three times a year.

⑧ يستخدم مع الأوامر والتعليمات

- ✓ You **set** the table and I **will wash** dishes.

⑨ يستخدم مع أفعال الشعور والحواس والإدراك والعاطفة والتفكير والملكية بدلاً من المضارع المستمر.

like, dislike, love, think, seem, look, know, feel, understand, want, need, hate, see, forget, prefer, believe, mean, taste, hear, have, possess, own..etc.

- ▶ Toka **is liking** surfing the internet. (x)
- ▶ Toka **likes** surfing the internet. (✓)

ملاحظات هامة على المضارع البسيط

للحظ شكل **V.be** في المضارع البسيط

V. be (am - is - are) ⊃ النفي (am not - isn't - aren't) + صفة

- ✓ She **is** a doctor but she **isn't** clever.

للحظ شكل **V. have** في المضارع البسيط

V. have (have - has) ⊃ النفي (don't have - doesn't have) + اسم/ضمير

- ✓ He **has** a house but he **doesn't have** a car.

هناك بعض الأفعال اللغة الانجليزية دائماً ما تستخدم في أزمنة البسيط سواء (مضارع / ماضي / مستقبل)

apologise - suggest - advise - promise - accept - agree - refuse

- ✓ I **promise** I won't be late. (NOT I'm promising)
- ✓ What do you **suggest** I do to keep fit?
  ⊃ I **suggest** that you go on a diet."

للحظ الفرق بين الحدث دائم الحدوث (نستخدم المضارع البسيط) ولكن إذا كان الحدث مؤقتاً أو غير معتاد نستخدم المضارع المستمر .

- ✓ My father usually **goes** to his work by car but today he **is going** by bus.

زمن المضارع المستمر
The Present continuous Tense

Formation التكوين in Active

I ➲ am
he / she / it ➲ is
we / you / they ➲ are
} (v. + ing)

- ✓ I **am playing** football at the moment.
- ✓ Jana **is doing** a research now.
- ✓ Look! They **are reading** novels.
- ✓ She **is doing** an operation.

Formation التكوين in Passive

Object + (am / is / are) + being+ P.P

- ✓ Football **is being played** at the moment.
- ✓ A research **is being done** by Jana.

Negative النفي

(isn't - aren't - am not) + V + ing

- ✓ Jana **isn't doing** a research now.
- ✓ Let's go out now. It **isn't raining** any more.
- ✓ They **aren't reading** novels.

Question السؤال

يتكون السؤال بمعني هل في المضارع البسيط من

(Am / Is / Are) الفاعل V + ing .... ?

- ✓ **Are** you **playing** football now?
  - ✓ Yes, I **am**.
- ✓ **Are** you **enjoying** the party?
  - ✗ No, I **am not**.

يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في المضارع البسيط من:

أداة استفهام (am / is / are) الفاعل V + ing .... ?

- ✓ What **are** you **doing**?
- ✓ Why **is** she **crying**?

➲ I **am watching** TV.
➲ Because her leg **is aching**.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

وهي كلمات تستخدم مع زمن المضارع المستمر وللحظ أن كلمة **still** تأتي بين جزئي الفعل

at present	في الحاضر	▶ **At present**, we **are studying** French.
at this moment	في هذه اللحظة	▶ **I'm eating** the meals **at this moment**.
now	الآن	▶ Toka **is crying now**.
still	ما زال	▶ She **is still reading**.
Look!	انظر	▶ **Look!** This pipe **is leaking** water.
Listen!	اسمع	▶ **Listen**! He **is singing** a nice song.
Watch!	شاهد	▶ **Watch**! The train **is coming**.
Be quiet!	كن هادئاً	▶ **Be quiet!** The baby **is sleeping**.
always	دائماً (للتعبير عن المضايقة)	▶ My little brother **is always bothering** me.
arrange	يرتب	▶ I arrange I **am having** dinner with my fiancée.
today	اليوم	▶ You're **working** hard today.
this week / **this year**	هذا الأسبوع / هذا العام	▶ The company I work for **isn't doing** so well this year.

Usage الاستخدام

① نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أحداث تحدث في لحظة الكلام مع كلمات مثل :

now - at this moment - at present - still - look - listen - watch - hurry - quick

✓ Listen, He **is singing**. ✓ Now they **are playing**. ✓ Look! The train **is coming**.

ليس من الضروري وجود كلمات دالة علي الزمن لكن الضروري الإحساس باستمرارية الحدث مثل:

✓ Keep quiet please, as I **am studying**. ✓ Quick! The bus **is leaving**.

✓ Where is Ali? - I don't know I think he **is reading** at the library.

② نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ترتيبات في المستقبل.

✓ We **are travelling** to London tomorrow as arranged.

✓ They bought the tickets. They **are having** dinner outside.

③ نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث مؤقت

✓ At a café, I like drinking coffe but this time I **am drinking** tea.

④ نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير حدث يحدث (ليس في لحظة الكلام) لكن في فترة معينة (هذا الأسبوع ، هذا العام).

✓ Hani will travel to America, so he **is learning** English this year.

[هذا معناه أنه بدأ في الدراسة ولم ينته منها بعد]

✓ We **are studying** biology this term.

⑤ نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث في تزايد.

✓ The pollution of the world **is rising** very fast.

✓ The problem of pollution **is getting** more and more serious.

✓ Do you get better? ✗ لاحظ الخطأ Are you getting better? ✓

⑥ نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن عادات سيئة مع ظروف التكرار.

✓ He **is always leaving** his clothes on the floor.

Notice The Difference لاحظ الاختلاف

Notes on the simple & continuous present

هذه الأفعال لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة هذه الأفعال تدل على الحالة وليس فعل أو حركة:

✓ verbs of the senses: feel, hear, see, smell, taste, notice, etc.

✓ verbs of emotions and preferences: like, dislike, love, hate, fear, mind, want, wish, need, prefer, admire, ...etc.

✓ verbs of perception, belief, knowledge, ownership: think, believe, know, understand, expect, remember, forget, hope, have, own, belong (to), ... etc.

✓ verbs which describe permanent states: be, cost, weigh, seem, appear, ..etc.

بعض الأفعال منها تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة طبقاً للمعنى.

have

عندما يأتي هذا الفعل بمعنى [يمتلك] لا يمكن استخدامه في المضارع المستمر أما عندما يأتي بمعنى [يأخذ أو يتناول.........] يمكن استخدامه في المضارع المستمر .

✓ They **have** a wonderful car. يملك ✓ I'**m having** a bath now.يأخذ

feel

عندما يأتي هذا الفعل بمعنى [يبدو] لا يمكن استخدامه في المضارع المستمر أما عندما يعني [يشعر] يمكن استخدامه في المضارع المستمر .

✓ How **do** you **feel** about your school? يبدو

✓ How **are** you **feeling** now? يشعر

think

عندما يأتي هذا الفعل بمعنى [يعتقد] لا يمكن استخدامه في المضارع المستمر إنما عندما يعني [يفكر في] يمكن استخدامه في المضارع المستمر .

✓ I **think** she is clever. يعتقد

✓ I'**m thinking** of buying a new car. يفكر

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Nurses .... after patients in hospitals.
ⓐ has looked ⓑ are looking ⓒ looks ⓓ look

2 We need to leave soon. It............ late.
ⓐ get ⓑ is getting ⓒ got ⓓ gets

3 The earth .... round the sun.
ⓐ is going ⓑ went ⓒ goes ⓓ go

4 The café .... at 7.30 in the morning.
ⓐ opning ⓑ opens ⓒ open ⓓ is opening

5 I .... I won't be late.
ⓐ promise ⓑ am promising ⓒ promises ⓓ promised

6 We can't play tennis today because it ....
ⓐ rains ⓑ rained ⓒ is raining ⓓ rain

7 Don't interrupt him. He .... the children in the group.
ⓐ counted ⓑ is counting ⓒ counts ⓓ count

8 My brother is used to organizing everything he ....
ⓐ do ⓑ does ⓒ did ⓓ didn't

9 We .... football in the streets. We play in the club.
ⓐ play never ⓑ are never played ⓒ never play ⓓ doesn't play

10 The English course .... in October, 12 as in the timetable.
ⓐ will start ⓑ start ⓒ starts ⓓ would start

11 The trousers you bought for me .... fit me.
ⓐ doesn't ⓑ don't ⓒ isn't ⓓ hasn't

12 I don't have anywhere to live right now. I............ for an apartment.
ⓐ am looking ⓑ look ⓒ looking ⓓ looked

13 The sun .... us heat and light.
ⓐ give ⓑ gives ⓒ gave ⓓ giving

14 My uncle .... my family next week.
ⓐ visited ⓑ visits ⓒ is visiting ⓓ has visited

15 I need to eat something soon. I............ hungry.
ⓐ got ⓑ get ⓒ are getting ⓓ am getting

Fill in gap:

16 Rice .... grow in cold climates.
17 How often .... you go to the dentist?
18 Bacteria .... hard to see by naked eye.
19 This knife is used............ bread.
20 Seldom does she .... shopping with her mother.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 The world changes. Things never stay the same. [..............................]
22 Ali goes usually away two or three times a year. [..............................]
23 Toka doesn't drinks tea very often. [..............................]
24 Ahmed is never late. He's always getting to work on time. [..............................]
25 I'm thinking Mary is Canadian, but I'm not sure. [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

① Robert .... away two or three times a year.
ⓐ is going usually ⓑ is usually going ⓒ usually goes ⓓ goes usually

② How .... now? - Better than before.
ⓐ you are feeling ⓑ do you feel ⓒ are you feeling ⓓ do you felt

③ I used to read science fiction stories, but I .... it now.
ⓐ am used to read ⓑ read ⓒ never read ⓓ am used to reading

④ I'll finish all the reports before I .... home.
ⓐ will go ⓑ had gone ⓒ went ⓓ go

⑤ Once I .... somewhere to live, I will send you my address.
ⓐ find ⓑ had found ⓒ will find ⓓ found

⑥ They don't need their car any more. They............ to sell it.
ⓐ tried ⓑ try ⓒ are trying ⓓ tries

⑦ I .... my bed when I get up.
ⓐ make always ⓑ always make ⓒ have always made ⓓ always makes

⑧ Ahmed .... takes drugs.
ⓐ doesn't use ⓑ any longer ⓒ no longer ⓓ any more

⑨ It .... rain in Egypt. It is usually hot and sunny.
ⓐ is often ⓑ has often ⓒ doesn't often ⓓ won't often

⑩ Calm down! I .... to the news.
ⓐ listen ⓑ listened ⓒ am listening ⓓ was listening

⑪ Before I .... Adel tomorrow, I will buy him a present.
ⓐ visiting ⓑ am going to visit ⓒ visit ⓓ will visit

⑫ Every day, my room............ while I am at school.
ⓐ was tidied ⓑ was being tidied ⓒ is tidied ⓓ tidied

⑬ Our rubbish............ every week.
ⓐare collected ⓑ is collected ⓒ was collecting ⓓ is collecting

⑭ He............ so lazy. He doesn't do anything to help.
ⓐ are always ⓑ is always being ⓒ always is ⓓ is always

⑮ It isn't true what they said. They............ .
ⓐ lie ⓑ are lying ⓒ is lying ⓓ lies

Fill in gap:

⑯ He .... up at 8 o'clock every morning.

⑰ I can't go shopping with you now because I .... my homework.

⑱ .... anybody need help?

⑲ Pupils .... homework to do every day.

⑳ Never .... he come to school late. He is so punctual.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

㉑ Look! That man tries to open the door of your car. [..............................]

㉒ Can you hear those people? What do they talk about? [..............................]

㉓ I'm hungry. I am wanting something to eat. [..............................]

㉔ "Hurry up! It's time to leave." "OK, I come." [..............................]

㉕ I must go now. It gets late. [..............................]

3 Advanced Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

① Please don't make so much noise. I............ to work.
ⓐ tried ⓑ try ⓒ am trying ⓓ tries

② Oh! No! I've lost my phone again. I............ things.
ⓐ always lose ⓑ always loses ⓒ always am losing ⓓ am always losing

③ Nancy .... of giving up her job.
ⓐ thinking ⓑ thinks ⓒ is thinking ⓓ think

④ She can't get used to .... for such a large company.
ⓐ work ⓑ working ⓒ being work ⓓ worked

⑤ He is often late for school but he............ absent from it.
ⓐ is never ⓑ never is ⓒ is always ⓓ usually is

⑥ The rich mud............ reaches Egyptian farmland.
ⓐ don't ⓑ no longer ⓒ doesn't ⓓ any longer

⑦ He never thinks about other people. He .... very selfish.
ⓐ is ⓑ is being ⓒ is been ⓓ being is

⑧ I can't understand why he............ so selfish. He isn't usually like that.
ⓐ is ⓑ is being ⓒ is been ⓓ being is

⑨ This room .... Let's open a window.
ⓐ is smelling ⓑ smell ⓒ smells ⓓ smelt

⑩ Hi, Jana. .... the party?
ⓐ Have you enjoy ⓑ Do you enjoy ⓒ Are you enjoying ⓓ you are enjoying

⑪ Listen to those people. What language .... ?
ⓐ they speak ⓑ they are speaking ⓒ do they speak ⓓ are they speaking

⑫ Excuse me, ... English?
ⓐ you are speaking ⓑ are you speaking ⓒ do you speak ⓓ does you speak

⑬ What's all that noise? What............ ?
ⓐ happen ⓑ happens ⓒ happening ⓓ is happening

⑭ "Where's Ahmed?" "He............ a shower.
ⓐ having ⓑ is having ⓒ has ⓓ had

⑮ Scarcely............ to school late. He is so punctual.
ⓐ he comes ⓑ comes he ⓒ does he come ⓓ is he come

Fill in gap:

⑯ Liars are people who .... the truth.
⑰ The water .... Can you turn it off?
⑱ Water .... at 100 degrees Celsius.
⑲ I didn't use to the dark but now I............ it.
⑳ Sama is energetic. This means she .... lazy.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

㉑ The population of the world increases very fast. [..............................]
㉒ What goes on? [..............................]
㉓ Anna isn't seeming very happy at the moment. [..............................]
㉔ The cost of living rises. Every year things are more expensive. [..............................]
㉕ You always play computer games. You should do something more active. [....................]

زمن المضارع التام
The Present Perfect Tense

Formation التكوين → in Active

(فاعل مفرد / He / She / It) مع has
(فاعل جمع / I / We / You / They) مع have
P.P.

✓ They **have watched** TV.
✓ He **has sent** me an e-mail this evening.
✓ Jana **has cooked** the dinner.
✓ I **have seen** that play.

Formation التكوين → in Passive

Object + (has / have) + been + P.P

✓ TV **has been watched** by them.
✓ This film **has been watched** by them.
✓ The dinner **has been cooked** by Jana.
✓ Some meals **have been prepared**.

Negative النفي

(فاعل مفرد / He / She / It) مع hasn't
(فاعل جمع / I / We / You / They) مع haven't
P.P.

✓ They **haven't watched** TV.
✓ Jana **hasn't cooked** the dinner.

Question السؤال

يتكون السؤال بمعنى هل في المضارع التام من:

Has / Have الفاعل p.p .... ?

✓ **Has** Jana **cooked** the dinner?
✓ Yes, she **has**.
✗ No, she **hasn't**.

يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في المضارع التام من:

أداة استفهام has / have الفاعل p.p .... ?

✓ How long **have** you **learned** English? ➲ I **have learned** English for ten years.
✓ Where **have** you **been**? ➲ I **have been** to the club.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

① Just - already - ever - never

have / has → just توا / already بالفعل
never أبدا / ever سبق ان → P.P.

✓ She's **never said** sorry for what she did.
✓ Are you hungry?
➲ I've **already** booked my flight home.
➲ No, I've **just had** lunch.

لاحظ استخدام ever مع النفي والسؤال والتفضيل:

✓ **Has** Jana **ever travelled** abroad?
✓ **No** student **has ever come** today.
✓ Jana **hasn't ever finished** her homework.
✓ "Days" is **the best** novel I **have ever read**.

لاحظ استخدام **never** في جملة بها **before** أو **such** أو للتعبير عن النفي:

- ✓ I have **never** seen a snake **before**.
- ✓ I **have never seen such** a beautiful girl.

❷ for - since

مضارع تام
have / has + P.P
تستخدم فى:
بداية الحدث أو
بداية المدة الزمنية

since

- 2010 - 2018...
- October - May...
- Sunday - Friday...
- marriage - childhood - graduation...
- 2o'clock - 7 o'clock...
- last
- then / when

مضارع تام
have / has + P.P
تستخدم
فى حالة
المدة الزمنية

for

- a year - two years...
- a month - three months...
- a week - six weeks...
- a long (short) time...
- an hour - two hours...
- the last...
- ages...

- ✓ Mr Ahmed **has lived** here for ten years.
- ✓ Jana **has travelled** for the last week.
- ✓ I **have lived** here since my **childhood**.
- ✓ She **has studied** French since 2019.
- ✓ She **has studied** French since last year.

يمكن استخدام since كأداة ربط

مضارع تام
have / has + P.P
هذا التركيب
It is+ a period of time

since

ماضى بسيط
V + ed or irregular
V + ing

- ✓ I **have played** this game **since** I **was** five.
- ✓ **It is** a year **since** I **met** Ali.
- ✓ She **has studied** English **since** she **started** her school.
- ✓ **It's** (**has been**) a long time **since** I **saw** him.
- ✓ **It is** a year **since meeting** Ali.

❸ yet - lately - so far - up till now - recently - already

مضارع تام
have / has + P.P
مضارع تام منفى
haven't / hasn't + P.P.

حاليــــاً	recently
حـتي الآن	so far
حـتي الآن	up till now
بالفعــل	already
مؤخـــراً	lately
حـتي الآن	yet

- ✓ Toka **hasn't registered** for class **yet**.
- ✓ I **haven't finished** my breakfast **lately**.
- ✓ She **has cooked** the meal **so far**.
- ✓ I **have studied** French **recently**.
- ✓ **Has** she **emailed** you **yet**?
- ✓ They **have lived** here **up till now**.

للحظ استخدام already في نهاية السؤال إذا كان المعنى يدل علي"دهشة / تعجب" أو الإجابة علي السؤال كانت ايجابية أى أنه قام بالحدث:

✓ Have you done your homework (yet - already)? - That's too fast.

④ How long - still - over (years - centuries).... - in the last.... It is the (first - second - third - last) time ....

✓ How long have you worked there?
✓ I've met many people in the last few days.
✓ Over the years, we have studied English.
✓ She still hasn't said sorry to me.
✓ It is the first time I have ever seen this film. (لاحظ استخدام ever مع هذا التركيب)

⑤ today / this evening / this year ..../ this ....

يتم استخدامها في المضارع التام مع الفترات التي لم تنتهي أثناء وقت الكلام:

✓ I've drunk four cups of coffee today.
✓ Have you had a holiday this year?
✓ I haven't seen Tom this morning.
✓ Jana hasn't worked very hard this term.

Usage الاستخدام

١ يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن أحداث بدأت في الماضي ومازال أثرها مستمرًا.

✓ Tom is looking for his key. He can't find it. He has lost his key.

٢ يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث انتهي في الماضي ولكن له نتيجة الآن.

✓ The road is closed. There's been an accident.

٣ يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن أحداث تمت حديثاً.

✓ I've just finished my first year at university.
✓ I've already told him twice.

٤ يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن أحداث لم تحدث بعد.

✓ She's never played tennis.

٥ يستخدم المضارع التام للسوال عن خبرة شخص أو للتحدث عن خبرة سابقة.

✓ Have you ever been to London?
✓ I have already been to London.

٦ يستخدم المضارع التام عند التحدث عن فترة من الوقت تستمر من الماضي حتى الآن.

✓ Susan really loves that film. She's seen it eight times!
✓ We've never had a car.

Wise Saying

Never give up on a dream just because of the time it will take to accomplish it. The time will pass anyway

أبداً لا تتخلى عن حلمك فقط لأنه يتطلب وقتاً طويلاً لتحقيقه، فالوقت سيمضي على أية حال

ملاحظات هامة على المضارع التام

❶ لاحظ الفرق بين:

have (has) gone / have (has) been

✓ I **have been to** Alex. = I **visited** Alex and **came back**. (ذهبت وعدت)

✓ I **have gone to** Alex. = I **visited** Alex and **I am still staying** there.(لم ارجع) ذهبت ومازلت هناك

للحظ استخدام **have been to** إذا وجد أكثر من مكان أو الذهاب للمكان أكثر من مرة أو عدم الذهاب للمكان وللحظ أن:

✓ been (to) = visited:

✓ I've never **been to** China. **Have** you **been** there?

Try to understand

Dave: **Have** you **travelled** a lot, Jane?
Jane: Yes, I**'ve been** to lots of places.
Dave: Really? **Have** you ever **been** to China?
Jane: Yes, I**'ve been** to China twice.
Dave: What about India?
Jane: No, I **haven't been** to India.

have (has) been in = have (has) gone to

✓ I **have been in** Luxor. I will come next week.
= I **have gone to** Luxor. I will come next week.

❷ لاحظ الفرق بين:

How long - How long ago

✓ (How long - **How long ago**) did you study English?

✓ (**How long** - How long ago) have you been studying English?

❸ لاحظ استخدام المضارع التام مع الروابط الزمنية **before / as soon as.. after / when** / ويليه جملة في المستقبل

✓ After I **have finished** my studies, I will travel abroad.

❹ عند استخدام **ago** بدلاً من **since / for** نحول المضارع التام إلى **began / started + to + inf.**

✓ It **has rained** for two hours.
= It **began to rain** two hours ago.

✓ She **has played** football for 6 months.
= She **started to play** football 6 months ago.

Subject + last + past simple + when + Subject + past simple
= Subject + haven't / hasn't + since + Subject + past simple

✓ I **last saw** my uncle when I **was** on his farm.
= I **haven't seen** my uncle since I **was** on his farm.

✓ I **last took** an aspirin 3 days **ago**. = I **haven't taken** an aspirin **for** 3 days.

am, is, are + still + V- ing
= haven't / hasn't + finished / stopped + V-ing.....yet.

✓ He **is still doing** his homework.
= He **hasn't finished doing** his homework **yet**.

المضارع التام المستمر
The Present perfect continuous

Formation التكوين in Active

(فاعل مفرد / He / She / It) مع has been
(فاعل جمع / I / We / You / They) مع have been
V+ing

- ✓ They **have been watching** TV all night.
- ✓ Jana **has been cooking** lunch for 3 hours.
- ✓ It **has been raining** for two hours.
- ✓ Where have you been? **I've been looking** for you everywhere.

Formation التكوين in Passive

Object + (has / have) + been + P.P

- ✓ TV **has been watched** by them.
- ✓ The dinner **has been cooked** by Jana.

Negative النفي

(فاعل مفرد / He / She / It) مع hasn't been
(فاعل جمع / I / We / You / They) مع haven't been
V+ing

- ✓ Ali **hasn't been feeling** well recently.

Question السؤال

يتكون السؤال بمعني هل في المضارع التام المستمر من:

Has / Have الفاعل been + V + ing .... ?

- ✓ You're out of breath. **Have** you **been running**?
  - ✓ Yes, I **have**.
  - ✗ No, I **haven't**.

يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في المضارع التام المستمر من:

اداة استفهام has / have الفاعل been + V + ing .... ?

- ✓ Where have you been?
- ✓ **I've been looking** for you everywhere.
- ✓ Why are you clothes so dirty? What **have** you **been doing**?

Key words الكلمات الدالة

بعض كلمات المضارع التام وأكثر استخداما لهذا الزمن يكون مع [all, for, since]:

since	منذ	He **has been travelling since** 2010.
for	لمدة	She **has been studying for** five hours now.
all	طوال	He **has been working** all day.
How long	كم طول المدة	How long **have** you **been waiting** for me?
lately	مؤخرا	I **haven't been eating** much lunch lately.

Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي ومازال مستمراً في المضارع ويمكن استمراره في المستقبل

- ✓ He **has been living** here for three years now.
- ✓ Toka **has been studying** all day.
- ✓ I **have been working** as a teacher since 2010.

يستخدم مع الاحداث التي تتكرر خلال فترة زمنية

- ✓ Mai is a very good tennis player. She's been playing since she was eight.
- ✓ Every morning they meet in this café. They've been going there for years.

الفرق بين المضارع التام البسيط والمضارع التام المستمر

يستخدم المضارع التام البسيط للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وانتهي و لكن له أثر أما المضـارع التـام المسـتمر يعبر عن حدث بدأ في الماضي و مازال مستمراً في الحاضر مع إحتمالية استمراره في المستقبل

وهناك حالات لا نستخدم فيها المضارع التام المستمر ونستخدم بدلاً منها المضارع التام:

❶ هناك أفعال لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة عموماً و هي أفعال الشعور و الحواس و الملكية و المعرفة.

- ✓ We are good friends. We have known each other for 10 years.

❷ إذا ذكرنا عدد مرات حدوث الفعل لا يستخدم المضارع التام المستمر بل نستخدم المضارع التام (لأن الحدث علي فترات متقاطعة):

- ✓ Ahmed has finished typing three reports. (has been finishing ✗)
- ✓ She has drunk five cups of tea. (has been drinking ✗)
- ✓ I (have stopped - have been stopping) writing stories for 3 years now.

❸ الأفعال التي لا تستغرق فترة طويلة (لحظية) لا تأتي في الاستمرارية مثل

(break down / stop / close / open / end / finish....)

- ✓ She is late for the meeting. Her car has broken down.
- ✓ I have known / had / heard etc. is the present perfect simple.
- ✓ I have been learning / been waiting / been doing etc.is the present perfect continuous

❹ نستخدم المضارع التام للسؤال بـ (How much, How many or How many times) و المضـارع التـام المسـتمر السؤال بـ (how long) مع الاشياء التي مازلت تحدث:

- ✓ How long have you been reading that book?
- ✓ How much of that book have you read?
- ✓ They've played tennis three times this week.
- ✓ I'm learning Arabic, but I haven't learnt very much yet.

Compare these examples

- ✓ My hands are very dirty. I've been repairing my bike.
- ✓ Joe has been eating too much recently. He should eat less.
- ✓ It's nice to see you again. What have you been doing since we last met?
- ✓ Where have you been? Have you been playing tennis?
- ✓ My bike is OK again now. I've repaired it.
- ✓ Somebody has eaten all the chocolates. The box is empty.
- ✓ Where's the book I gave you? What have you done with it?
- ✓ Have you ever played tennis?

الفرق بين المضارع المستمر و المضارع التام المستمر

I am doing (present continuous)	I have been doing (present perfect continuous)
▸ Don't disturb me now. I'm working.	▸ I've been working hard. Now I'm going to have a break.
▸ We need an umbrella. It's raining.	▸ The ground is wet. It's been raining.
▸ Hurry up! We're waiting.	▸ We've been waiting for an hour.

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

① That's the first time I .... you get angry.
ⓐ saw ⓑ was seen ⓒ have been seeing ⓓ have seen

② Yara............ her key. She can't get into the house.
ⓐ lost ⓑ has lost ⓒ had lost ⓓ losing

③ .... have these students studied French?
ⓐ For then ⓑ For when ⓒ Since when ⓓ How long ago

④ Once I .... this novel, I'll give it to my old friend.
ⓐ have read ⓑ has read ⓒ had read ⓓ was reading

⑤ It's ages since I .... her.
ⓐ had seen ⓑ saw ⓒ have seen ⓓ see

⑥ Wow, have you done your work ....?
ⓐ yet ⓑ ever ⓒ already ⓓ never

⑦ It's the second time .... to this place.
ⓐ I am ⓑ I have gone ⓒ I've been ⓓ I went

⑧ Have you ever .... to Italy?
ⓐ gone ⓑ been ⓒ stayed ⓓ visited

⑨ We've never .... to France.
ⓐ gone ⓑ going ⓒ been ⓓ go

⑩ She can't go to the party because she .... a cold.
ⓐ caught ⓑ has caught ⓒ have caught ⓓ had caught

⑪ How long .... married?
ⓐ had you been ⓑ have you been ⓒ have you gone ⓓ have you

⑫ It 's exactly four years............ I last played football with my friends.
ⓐ since ⓑ when ⓒ for ⓓ ago

⑬ Sama .... her pen. That's why she isn't writing.
ⓐ had lost ⓑ has lost ⓒ was lost ⓓ was being lost

⑭ Since I .... in Cairo, I haven't seen my friend Ali.
ⓐ were ⓑ was ⓒ have been ⓓ had been

⑮ Ahmed can't phone you as he .... his mobile.
ⓐ lost ⓑ has lost ⓒ had lost ⓓ losing

Fill in gap:

⑯ I .... n't seen Tom for three days.

⑰ I haven't seen Tom .... Monday.

⑱ They haven't had a holiday .... ten years.

⑲ Mai is writing emails. She's .... writing emails all morning.

⑳ They've been playing tennis .... 2 o'clock.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

㉑ Jana is here now. She has gone to the market. [..............................]

㉒ For the last meeting, we haven't seen each other again. [..............................]

㉓ Sally has been working here since six months. [..............................]

㉔ I'm hungry. I haven't eaten anything for breakfast. [..............................]

㉕ Where have you been? Have you been played tennis? [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I have written stories............ as long as I can remember.
ⓐ for ⓑ since ⓒ while ⓓ after

2 I last met Ali when we were at your party. Since then, I............ him.
ⓐ haven't met ⓑ hadn't met ⓒ didn't meet ⓓ wasn't meeting

3 Prices .... sharply over the past three years.
ⓐ rose ⓑ have risen ⓒ had risen ⓓ rise

4 James is on holiday. He .... to Italy.
ⓐ is gone ⓑ has gone ⓒ has been ⓓ have gone

5 Everything is going well. We .... any problems so far.
ⓐ didn't have ⓑ don't have ⓒ haven't had ⓓ hasn't had

6 Sarah has lost her passport again. It's the second time this ....
ⓐ has happened ⓑ happens ⓒ happened ⓓ is happening

7 You're out of breath. .... running?
ⓐ Are you ⓑ Have you ⓒ Have you been ⓓ Do you

8 Sally has been working here ....
ⓐ for six months ⓑ since six months ⓒ six months ago ⓓ in six months

9 It .... raining for a while, but now it's raining again.
ⓐ stopped ⓑ has stopped ⓒ was stopped ⓓ has been stopping

10 I enjoyed the film as I saw many places I've never ....
ⓐ gone ⓑ been to ⓒ been ⓓ arrived

11 I .... a vegetarian; I've never eaten meat.
ⓐ had always been ⓑ have always been ⓒ was never been ⓓ was always being

12 Ahmed has just sent me an email. He .... to me since last month.
ⓐ hasn't written ⓑ didn't write ⓒ hadn't written ⓓ hasn't been writing

13 We............ our relatives for a year. They are too busy.
ⓐ have met ⓑ haven't been met ⓒ never have met ⓓ haven't met

14 She .... hard for about eight hours now.
ⓐ has been working ⓑ is working ⓒ works ⓓ will work

15 Egypt .... much over the years.
ⓐ changed ⓑ had changed ⓒ is changing ⓓ has changed

Fill in gap:

16 It's been raining .... lunchtime.
17 It............ a long time since we last met.
18 He has been training hard .... the last Olympic games.
19 You are kidding! Have you drunk all the juice .... ?
20 I haven't written to him .... Christmas.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 Have you finished reading that novel yet? - That's amazing. [..........................]
22 She has practised doing this work since the last year. [..........................]
23 She has lived in this village at the age of seven. [..........................]
24 How much of that book do you read? [..........................]
25 I haven't met the minister already. It's the first time to meet him. [..........................]

3 Advanced Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Our block of flats .... since 2012.
ⓐ have built ⓑ has been built ⓒ has built ⓓ have been built

2 After he .... school, he will be spending six months in India.
ⓐ leaving ⓑ has left ⓒ had left ⓓ left

3 She .... able to play tennis since she broke her arm.
ⓐ isn't ⓑ wasn't ⓒ hasn't been ⓓ hasn't gone

4 I............ such a tricky person all my life long.
ⓐ never have seen ⓑ have never seen ⓒ never seen ⓓ not seen

5 A bad accident .... place on Cairo-Alex desert road recently.
ⓐ took ⓑ has taken ⓒ has been taken ⓓ had taken

6 Toka .... very hard this term.
ⓐ hasn't worked ⓑ hadn't worked ⓒ haven't worked ⓓ don't work

7 Wagah is very tired. He has .... very hard all day.
ⓐ been working ⓑ working ⓒ been worked ⓓ worked

8 They have played tennis three times ....
ⓐ last week ⓑ next week ⓒ a week ⓓ this week

9 Since .... her, I haven't slept well.
ⓐ seen ⓑ saw ⓒ seeing ⓓ see

10 There .... any news about Sara since she moved to Beni Suef.
ⓐ wasn't ⓑ weren't ⓒ haven't been ⓓ hasn't been

11 It's two years .... Ali.
ⓐ that I don't see ⓑ that I haven't seen ⓒ since I didn't see ⓓ since I last saw

12 I .... you five times this morning. Where have you been?
ⓐ have called ⓑ was called ⓒ had called ⓓ was calling

13 .... he worked as a football trainer, he has earned a lot of money.
ⓐ while ⓑ Having ⓒ Since ⓓ After

14 I haven't seen Seif .... the last time we met at the cinema.
ⓐ while ⓑ when ⓒ for ⓓ since

15 A lot more birds .... on the shore this year.
ⓐ saw ⓑ hasn't seen ⓒ had been seen ⓓ have been seen

Fill in gap:

16 Lisa is writing emails. She's sent lots of emails .... week.

17 They've .... married for ten years.

18 It's two years since I last .... Nada.

19 "How long have you been driving?" "Since I .... 17."

20 She's been waiting .... morning.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 They haven't had a holiday since ten years. [..............................]

22 I've been knowing about the problem for a long time. [..............................]

23 It was ages since we went to the cinema. [..............................]

24 They are married for 20 years. [..............................]

25 How long have you been having that camera? [..............................]

4 Advanced Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The museum............ by thousands of people this year.
ⓐ has visited ⓑ has been visited ⓒ visited ⓓ visit

2 That's the best presentation........... .
ⓐ I never heard ⓑ I didn't hear ⓒ I used to hear ⓓ I've ever heard

3 I haven't seen Mazen............ the last time we met in Alexandria.
ⓐ while ⓑ when ⓒ for ⓓ since

4 It is the most exciting journey I have............ been to. I have not had such a journey.
ⓐ ago ⓑ never ⓒ ever ⓓ yet

5 Ahmed is the best driver I............ up till now.
ⓐ have ever seen ⓑ had ever seen ⓒ have never seen ⓓ had never seen

6 Oh, I............ the bus. How can I go to the university now?
ⓐ had missed ⓑ has missed ⓒ have missed ⓓ missed

7 Since her childhood, Rawan............ in her hometown.
ⓐ was living ⓑ has lived ⓒ lives ⓓ lived

8 He has.........in London for three years now. He is doing post graduate studies there.
ⓐ gone ⓑ got ⓒ been ⓓ done

9 Ali and his family have travelled since............
ⓐ his marriage ⓑ he marries ⓒ he gets married ⓓ married

10 He has gone to London. This means that he............ there.
ⓐ is still ⓑ won't be ⓒ is no longer ⓓ was

11 He............ in Cairo. I will wait for him until he comes back.
ⓐ has been ⓑ has gone ⓒ goes ⓓ had gone

12 Now Huda lives in extreme poverty because all the money she had, ...
ⓐ been lost ⓑ was lost ⓒ has been lost ⓓ is being lost

13 I travelled to Europe in 2016, since then, I............ there again.
ⓐ didn't go ⓑ wasn't ⓒ weren't ⓓ haven't been

14 I .... five clients today.
ⓐ have met ⓑ have been met ⓒ was met ⓓ meet

15 I only bought my new car last week, but I............ 5000km. with it so far.
ⓐ already driven ⓑ have already driven ⓒ had already driven ⓓ drove

Fill in gap:

16 A: Where is your father, Amin? B: He has............ to the supermarket.

17 Manal hasn't phoned us............ the summer holiday.

18 My father has............ to America on business and he is still there.

19 He lives in Paris; he has............ there since 2001.

20 The dishes are clean. -Who............ them?

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 Salah hasn't trained with the team when his injury in the final. [..............................]

22 I haven't studied physics since the last week. [..............................]

23 This is the first time I've never eaten shrimps. [..............................]

24 I have passed this test ever. [..............................]

25 He has lived in his hometown for the last visit. [..............................]

زمن الماضي البسيط
The Past Simple Tense

Formation التكوين (in Active)

التصريف الثاني للفعل بإضافة (d - ed - ied) أو حفظ الأفعال الغير منتظمة.

- ✓ I **played** football yesterday.
- ✓ Aya **went** to the cinema.
- ✓ The police **stopped** me on my way home last night.
- ✓ We **saw** Toka in town a few days ago.

Formation التكوين (in Passive)

Object + (was / were) + P.P

- ✓ Football **was played** yesterday.
- ✓ The film **was watched** at home by Jana.

Negative النفي

didn't + inf. .... / never + التصريف الثاني

- ✓ They **didn't invite** us to the party, so we **didn't go**.
- ✓ I **never got** up late when I was young.

Question السؤال

يتكون السؤال بمعنى هل في الماضي البسيط من

Did الفاعل inf. .... ?

- ✓ **Did** you **play** football yesterday?
  - ✓ Yes, I **did**.
  - ✗ No, I **didn't**.
- ✓ **Did** you **go** out last night?
  Yes, I **went** to the cinema, but I **didn't enjoy** the film much.

يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في الماضي البسيط من:

أداة استفهام + did الفاعل inf. .... ?

- ✓ What **did** you **do** at the weekend? ➲ I **didn't do** anything.
- ✓ When **did** Mr Thomas **die**? ➲ About ten years ago.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

وهي كلمات تستخدم مع زمن الماضي البسيط مثل ولاحظ أنهم ياتوا أول الجملة و أخرها

yesterday	أمس	▶ I **sent** an e-mail to my friend yesterday.
ago	منذ	▶ This house **was built** three years ago.
last	السابق	▶ Seif **wrote** his first novel last year.
in........	في (سنة سابقة)	▶ Ahmed **was born** in 1986.
in the past	في الماضي	▶ In the past, the wind **was used** to sail ships.
once/ one day	مرة	▶ Once, I **had** a terrible accident.
How long ago	متى	▶ How long ago **did** you **start** studying English?
in ancient time	في عصور قديم	▶ These pyramids **were built** in ancient time.
the other day	منذ بضعة ايام	▶ I **met** Farouk in Beni Suief the other day.

يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط مع بعض التعبيرات الآتية ويعبر عن ماضي غير حقيقي.

1) I wish + فاعل + ماضي بسيط	▸ I wish Toka **studied** well.
2) It's (high) time + فاعل + ماضي بسيط	▸ It's time she **studied** English.
3) I would rather + فاعل + ماضي بسيط	▸ I would rather she **studied** well.
4) suppose / imagine + فاعل + ماضي بسيط	▸ Suppose you **inherited** five million dollars, what would you do?

Usage الاستخدام

❶ يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث بدأ و انتهى في الماضي

- ✓ He **visited** his uncle yesterday. He **had** his lunch and went out.
- ✓ Aya **passed** her exam because she **studied** very hard.

❷ يستخدم الماضي البسيط لوصف أحداث تتبع بعضها(سرد احداث قصة/ رواية / موقف /......)

- ✓ He **did** his homework then **slept**.
- ✓ First, I **met** him then I **asked** him to come with me after that he **agreed**.
- ✓ Once, Aya **found** a wallet, then she **went** to the police.

❸ يستخدم الماضي البسيط في الحالة الثانية (If) للتعبير عن النصيحة و الوضع الافتراضي (suppose / imagine)

- ✓ If she **studied** hard, he **would succeed**.
- ✓ If I **trained** hard, I **would win** the race.

❹ يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع الروابط الزمنية مثل (after/ as soon as / before..) بشرط أن يكون الزمن الآخر ماضي

- ✓ After he **had studied**, he **slept**.
- ✓ Mai **had had** dinner before she **watched** TV.
- ✓ Mona **didn't come** until Toka **had invited** her.
- ✓ No sooner **had** I **finished** studying, than I **watched** TV.

❺ يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن عادات و أفعال متكررة في الماضي مع اظرف التكرار:

always / usually / sometimes / every.....

- ✓ When I **was** young, I usually **played** with my friends every day.
- ✓ I always **did** my homework at night but I **no longer do**.
- ✓ He **drove** into town **every day last week**.
- ✓ He always **got up** late **last year**.

❻ يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن في عادة في الماضي مع

اعتاد أن (تعبر عن عادة كانت تحدث في الماضي ولم تعد تحدث الآن) used to+inf.
النفي ⊂ لم يعتاد أن didn't use to+inf. = never used to+ inf.
السؤال ⊂ did الفاعل use to + inf. ....?

- ✓ I **used to play** football when I was young, but now I don't.
- ✓ When I was young, I **didn't use to** get up late.
- ✓ **Did** you **use to** get up early?

جملة التعقيب بعد **but now** تكون مضارع وعكس الجملة الأساسية ويستخدم **do - does** إذا كان فعل الجملة ليس **V. be** أما إذا كان **V. be** نستخدم **am - is - are**:

- ✓ I used to **sleep** late, but now I **don't**.
- ✓ She used to **get up** early, but now she **doesn't**.
- ✓ She used to **be** active, but now she **isn't**.
- ✓ They used to **be** lazy, but now they **aren't**.

لاحظ الفرق بين:

يعتاد على(تعبر عن عادة تحدث في الحاضر) am - is - are – get(s) used to (V+ing)(n)

✓ I'm **used to playing** football.
✓ She is used to getting up early.

لاحظ أن **(am - is – are) used to** تأتي بمعنى (يستخدم لـــ) ويليها **inf.**

✓ The wind **is used to sail** ships.
✓ Cotton **is used to make** clothes.

لاحظ أن:

الفاعل used to + inf. = الفاعل + no longer مضارع بسيط = الفاعل + مضارع بسيط منفي ..any more.

✓ He **used to** smoke = He **no longer** smokes. = He doesn't smoke **any more** (**longer**).

لاحظ شكل **V. be** في الماضي البسيط:

The past of be (am / is / are) ➲ was / were

✓ I **was** angry because they **were** late.
✓ **Was** the weather good when you **were** on holiday?
✓ They **weren't** able to come because they **were** so busy.
✓ Did you go out last night or **were** you too tired?

زمن الماضي المستمر
The Past Continuous Tense

Formation التكويـــن in Active

الفاعل + was / were + (V +ing)

✓ This time last year I **was living** in Brazil.
✓ They **were watching** TV yesterday evening.
✓ Jana **was cooking** dinner all day yesterday.

Formation التكويـــن in Passive

Object + (was / were) + being + P.P

✓ TV **was being watched** yesterday evening.
✓ Dinner **was being prepared** by Jana.

Negative النفـــي

wasn't / weren't + (V +ing)

✓ They **weren't watching** TV yesterday evening.
✓ Jana **wasn't preparing** dinner.

Question السـؤال

يتكون السؤال بمعني هل في الماضي المستمر من:

Was / Were الفاعل (V +ing) .... ?

✓ **Was** Jana **cooking** dinner?
- ✓ Yes, she **was**.
- ✗ No, she **wasn't**.

يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في الماضي المستمر من:

اداة استفهام + was / were الفاعل (V +ing) .... ?

✓ What **were** you **doing** at 10 o'clock last night? ➲ I **was doing** my homework.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

وهي كلمات تستخدم مع زمن الماضي المستمر

❶ while - as - just as

While → ماضي مستمر past continuous → ماضي بسيط past simple

ماضي بسيط past simple ← While → ماضي مستمر past continuous

نستخدم بعد **while** ماضي مستمر والجملة الثانية ماضي بسيط:

- ✓ **While** I **was watching** TV, the light **went** out. حدث قطع آخر
- ✓ The light **went** out **while** I **was watching** TV.
- ✓ **As** I **was watching** TV, my father **came**.
- ✓ **Just as** she **was cooking**, she **fainted**.

While → ماضي مستمر past continuous → ماضي مستمر past continuous

يمكن أن يكون الحدثين مع **while** في الماضي المستمر:

- ✓ **While** Jana **was watching** TV, Toka **was studying** English. حدثان مستمران

While → ماضي بسيط past simple → ماضي بسيط past simple

يمكن استخدام الماضي البسيط بعد **while** إذا كان الفعل الأساسي **verb to be**:

- ✓ **While** I **was** at street, I **fell** off my bike.

While → عدم وجود فاعل V + ing → ماضي بسيط past simple

إذا لم يأتي بعد **while** فاعل يأتي بعدها (**V+ing**) بشرط ان يكون فاعل الجملتين واحداً:

- ✓ **While playing**, I **fell** down.

❷ when

When → ماضي بسيط past simple → ماضي مستمر past continuous

ماضي مستمر past continuous ← When → ماضي بسيط past simple

- ✓ When the phone **rang**, he **was leaving** his office.
- ✓ He **was leaving** his office when the phone **rang**.
- ✓ It **was raining** when I **got** up.

❸ on

On → V + ing → ماضي بسيط past simple

يمكن استخدام **On** بدلاً من **when** ويأتي بعدها **V+ing**

- ✓ **On arriving**, he **found** the light on.
- ✓ On **seeing** the accident, I called the police.

on (seeing - hearing - reaching)

④ during

During → noun (اسم) → past simple (ماضي بسيط)

يمكن استخدام **during** بدلاً من **while** و يأتي بعدها **Noun**

✓ **During the party**, I **received** many presents.
✓ **During the game**, he **got** hurt.

كلمة تدل علي الماضي و قبلها أو بعدها فترة زمنية ⑤

✓ Jana **was studying** at seven yesterday.
✓ They **were studying** English at 7 o'clock last Sunday.

Usage الاستخدام

❶ يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي.

✓ He **was playing** all morning yesterday.

❷ يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي عندما وقع حدث آخر.

✓ Matt **phoned** while we **were having** dinner.
✓ I **hurt** my back while I **was working** in the garden.
✓ I **was walking** along the road when I saw Ali. So I **stopped**, and we **had** a chat.

❸ يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي.

✓ While she **was preparing** dinner, he **was watching** TV.

Important Notes

❶ لاحظ الفرق بين الماضي المستمر و الماضي التام المستمر:

✓ I **was doing** my homework all day yesterday.
✓ I **had been doing** my homework all day yesterday before I slept.

❷ لاحظ استخدام because في الماضي المستمر:

✓ I couldn't answer the phone **because** I **was having** a shower.
✓ He couldn't reply to his friends because he **was praying**.

❸ هناك أفعال لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة عموماً و هي أفعال الشعور و الحواس و الملكية و المعرفة.

✓ We were good friends. We **knew** each other well. (NOT **were knowing**)
✓ I was enjoying the party, but Mai **wanted** to go home. (NOT **was wanting**)

الفرق بين الماضي البسيط و الماضي المستمر

Compare the past continuous (I was doing) and past simple (I did):

Past continuous (in the middle of an action)

✓ I **was walking** home when I met Dan. (in the middle of walking home)
✓ Toka **was watching** TV when we arrived.

Past simple (complete action)

✓ I **walked** home after the party last night. (= all the way, completely)
✓ Toka **watched** TV a lot when she was ill last year.
Compare:
✓ When Jana arrived, we **were having** dinner.
(= we had already started before she arrived)
✓ When Jana arrived, we **had** dinner. (= Jana arrived, and then we had dinner)

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 During the previous conference, he .... a speech.
ⓐ gives ⓑ has given ⓒ gave ⓓ had given

2 When Nader was in Sharm El-Sheik, he............ a lot.
ⓐ sunbathed ⓑ was sunbathing ⓒ have sunbathed ⓓ would sunbathe

3 My purse............ last week.
ⓐ stole ⓑ stolen ⓒ was stolen ⓓ steal

4 While studying, he............ asleep.
ⓐ fall ⓑ fallen ⓒ fell ⓓ felt

5 Maged's grandmother............ ill when he visited her yesterday.
ⓐ seemed ⓑ was seeming ⓒ has seemed ⓓ had seemed

6 About ten million tourists............ Egypt in 2018.
ⓐ are visiting ⓑ visited ⓒ will visit ⓓ have visited

7 I............ lunch at home yesterday.
ⓐ haven't ⓑ hasn't ⓒ didn't have ⓓ hadn't

8 He............ playing football. He was fond of football.
ⓐ use to ⓑ is used to ⓒ was used to ⓓ was used

9 When he was young, he............ to hospital as a result of an accident.
ⓐ took ⓑ had taken ⓒ was taken ⓓ was taken

10 The TV sound was too high. Of course Amal .... it.
ⓐ watched ⓑ had watched ⓒ has watched ⓓ was watching

11 While she was cooking, her sister .... homework.
ⓐ was doing ⓑ did ⓒ does ⓓ had done

12 Unfortunately, I .... two mistakes in my English Exam yesterday.
ⓐ have made ⓑ have done ⓒ did ⓓ made

13 How long .... did you play tennis?
ⓐ for ⓑ ago ⓒ since ⓓ ever

14 I waved to Aya, but she ....
ⓐ wasn't looking ⓑ was looking ⓒ hadn't looked ⓓ looked

15 .... a car when you were living in Paris?
ⓐ Had you ⓑ Were you having ⓒ Have you had ⓓ Did you have

Fill in gap:

16 .... 2002, my elder brother finished studying at university.
17 What time............ it when your father arrived?
18 I used to play in the street when I was young but now I............ .
19 Soha started school two months............
20 Have you seen Ola? - Yes, I............ her an hour ago.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 I was watching TV while my mobile phone rang. [..............................]
22 Did you go out last night or did you busy? [..............................]
23 Have you ever been to Cairo? - Yes, I have been there in 2005. [..............................]
24 I saw you in the park yesterday. You were sitting on the grass and read a book.[........]
25 We were good friends. We were knowing each other well. [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 What .... when you were in the garden?
ⓐ you were doing ⓑ were you doing ⓒ are you doing ⓓ have you done

2 I had to take a taxi because my car............ .
ⓐ mending ⓑ was mending ⓒ was being mended ⓓ mended

3 .... the film, Mahmoud fell asleep because it was a boring film.
ⓐ While ⓑ When ⓒ On ⓓ During

4 Mazen............ chess all day yesterday.
ⓐ played ⓑ was playing ⓒ is playing ⓓ had played

5 When the phone rang, I............ my lunch.
ⓐ had ⓑ am having ⓒ was having ⓓ will have

6 While the party............, we were busy sending invitations to our friends.
ⓐ was prepared ⓑ was been prepared ⓒ was being prepared ⓓ is prepared

7 As I............ home last night, it started raining.
ⓐ has walked ⓑ had walked ⓒ was walking ⓓ walked

8 While Basant was studying her lesson, her young brother............ T.V.
ⓐ was watching ⓑ watches ⓒ is watching ⓓ watched

9 From 7 to 9 yesterday, I............ a certain task as I was asked.
ⓐ did ⓑ had done ⓒ was doing ⓓ have done

10 Where ....?
ⓐ was written the book ⓑ was the book written
ⓒ the book was written ⓓ the book was writing

11 The thief .... and sent to prison.
ⓐ was arrested ⓑ arrested ⓒ was arresting ⓓ has arrested

12 Before joining the university, I .... living away from my family.
ⓐ used ⓑ didn't use to ⓒ used to ⓓ wasn't used to

13 My grandparents .... farmers for 40 years.
ⓐ were ⓑ had been ⓒ was ⓓ has

14 What games did you .... play when you were at school?
ⓐ used to ⓑ was used ⓒ is used to ⓓ use to

15 When he was in Cairo, he always............ along the Nile.
ⓐ walked ⓑ was walking ⓒ walks ⓓ 'll walk

Fill in gap:

16 .... the party, I met an old friend.
17 While I............ ill, I lost a lot of weight and became so thin.
18 Once, We .... lunch in this restaurant.
19 Really, they visited the zoo five years ....
20 .... your office cleaned yesterday?

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 On the flight, I was reading a book called "Giants' Grammar." [..............................]
22 I helped my mother while she was cooking. [..............................]
23 While he was playing football, he fall and the broke his leg. [..............................]
24 I'd rather they come to the party early. [..............................]
25 It was cold, so he shuts the window. [..............................]

3 Advanced Exercises

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 They didn't answer the ringing phone since they............ deeply.
ⓐ sleep ⓑ were sleeping ⓒ are sleeping ⓓ has slept

2 I............ to preparing my meals when I started to live away from my family.
ⓐ used ⓑ got used ⓒ get used ⓓ become used

3 He doesn't stay up late any longer. This means he............ .
ⓐ used to stay up late ⓑ didn't use to stay up late
ⓒ usually stays up late ⓓ is in the habit of staying up late

4 My brother............ the money he needed.
ⓐ gave ⓑ didn't give ⓒ give ⓓ was given

5 While my car............ at the garage, I was having a meal at a nearby restaurant.
ⓐ was repairing ⓑ was being repaired ⓒ had repaired ⓓ repaired

6 I no longer work in Saudi Arabia. I .... there for ten years.
ⓐ had worked ⓑ work ⓒ have worked ⓓ worked

7 Rawan used to be lazy, but now she ....
ⓐ does no longer ⓑ is no longer ⓒ no longer does ⓓ no longer is

8 Amr............ for eight hours every day last week.
ⓐ had worked ⓑ worked ⓒ has worked ⓓ works

9 He............ fat but now he is.
ⓐ used to be ⓑ didn't use to be ⓒ is used to being ⓓ isn't used to being

10 "I used to smoke " means............ .
ⓐ I started ⓑ I no longer do it ⓒ I smoke ⓓ I'll stop it

11 It is time they............ home from school. I wonder what has delayed them.
ⓐ go ⓑ have gone ⓒ went ⓓ are going

12 Even the only thing that I .... I now hate.
ⓐ used to love ⓑ love ⓒ am used to loving ⓓ was loved

13 Ahmed .... to school just now.
ⓐ went ⓑ has gone ⓒ has been ⓓ has left

14 .... visiting hours, we got an entrance ticket for the hospital to see my uncle.
ⓐ During ⓑ On ⓒ After ⓓ While

15 During .... to school, I saw some students quarrelling fiercely.
ⓐ walking ⓑ walks ⓒ my walk ⓓ was walking

Fill in gap:

16 .... in the office, he received a call from his wife.

17 .... the race, she fell fainted and lost her national record.

18 I saw a lot of tourists while .... in Luxor.

19 While I............ at school, suddenly an earthquake took place.

20 I'd rather you............ English hard.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 While I was being in Banha, I met an old friend of mine. [..............................]

22 Yesterday, we were discussing the new project and had a good time as well.[..............]

23 He made some new friends when his stay in Cairo. [..............................]

24 I had a bath, so I didn't hear the doorbell. [..............................]

25 She gave an award for her bravery during the fire. [..............................]

زمن الماضي التام
The Past Perfect Tense

Formation التكويــن in Active

had + P.P

- ✓ When we got home last night, we found that somebody had **broken into** the flat.
- ✓ Aya didn't want to go to the cinema because she'**d already** seen the movie.
- ✓ I thought I'**d done** the right thing, but I realised that I'd made a big mistake.

Formation التكويــن in Passive

Object + had + been + P.P

- ✓ When we got home last night, we found that the flat had been **broken into**.
- ✓ Dinner **had been prepared** by Jana when I came back.

Negative النفــي

hadn't (had never) + P.P

- ✓ The house was dirty. They **hadn't cleaned it** for weeks.
- ✓ The man on the plane was very nervous because **he'd never flown** before.

Question السؤال

يتكون السؤال بمعني هل في الماضي التام من

Had الفاعل + P.P .... ?

- ✓ **Had** Jana **prepared** dinner when you reached home?
  - ✓ Yes, she **had**.
  - ✗ No, she **hadn't**.

يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في الماضي التام من:

اداة استفهام + had الفاعل + P.P .... ?

- ✓ What **had** you **done** before I came?
- ✓ I **had called** my relatives before you came.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

وهي كلمات تستخدم مع زمن الماضي التام:

① after (before that) - as soon as - when - because (as - since)

After → **past Perfect** (ماضــي تــام) / **V + ing** (عدم وجود فاعل) → **past simple** (ماضــي بسيــط)

- ✓ After he **had read** the novel, he **watched** TV.
- ✓ After **reading** the novel, he **watched** TV.
- ✓ As soon as he **had eaten** his meal, he **drank** tea.
- ✓ I slept **before that** I had studied English.
- ✓ I **didn't swim** because I **had forgotten** my suit.
- ✓ She **didn't buy** anything as (since) the shop **had been closed**.
- ✓ When I **had arrived** at the station, the train **left**.

عدم وجود رابط

Having + P.P

✓ Having **read** the novel, he **watched** TV.

② before (after that) - by the time - when

Before
past simple ماضى بسيط
V + ing عدم وجود فاعل
past Perfect ماضى تام

- ✓ Before he watched TV, he had read the novel.
- ✓ Before watching TV, he had read the novel.
- ✓ I had studied English after that I slept.
- ✓ By the time I arrived, the thief had escaped.
- ✓ When we arrived at the cinema, the film had already started.

③ till - until

past simple ماضى بسيط
till / until
past Perfect ماضى تام

- ✓ He didn't park his car until he had found a place.
- ✓ She never watched TV till she had finished all work.

④ already / just / never / yet / ...before. / by + عام سابق

- ✓ When we arrived, the film had already started.
- ✓ She had just got home when I phoned her.
- ✓ By 2018, I had finished all my studies.
- ✓ He told me he had already done his homework.
- ✓ They had never come late before.

⑤ no sooner - scarcely - hardly

فاعل + had
no sooner / scarcely / hardly
P.P +
.... than / .... when / .... when
..التصريف الثاني للأفعال الغير منتظم أو (v+ed)..

للحظ إذا جاءوا في اول الكلام يأتي بعدهم الفعل المساعد (بعدهم صيغةالسؤال)

No sooner / Scarcely / Hardly
had + فاعل
P.P +
.... than / .... when / .... when
..التصريف الثاني للأفعال الغير منتظم أو (v+ed)..

- ✓ They had no sooner finished painting our new house than we moved into it.
- ✓ No sooner had they finished painting our new house than we moved into it.
- ✓ They had hardly finished painting our new house when we moved into it.
- ✓ Scarcely had they finished painting our new house when we moved into it.

⑥ It was only when - It was not until

It was only when
It was not until
ماضى تام + that
ماضى بسيط

- ✓ It was only when I had done my homework that I went to bed.
- ✓ It was not until I had done my homework that I went to bed.

Usage الاستخدام

❶ يستخدم الماضي التام في ترتيب الأحداث فيكون الحدث الأول ماضي تام و الثاني ماضي بسيط

✓ I travelled but before that I **had locked** my flat.

✓ After she **had cooked**, she set the table. ✓ Before I came, I **had called** her.

❷ يستخدم الماضي التام للتعبير عن حدث تم قبل وقت معين في الماضي

✓ Before Jana **had** lunch, she **had set** the table.

✓ I **had done** my work by the time I **went** out.

❸ يستخدم الماضي التام إذا أردنا التحدث عن الأشياء التي حدثت قبل هذا الوقت

✓ When Sarah arrived at the party, Paul **had** already **gone** home.

زمن الماضي التام المستمر
The Past Perfect Continuous Tense

Formation التكوين → in Active

had been + V + ing

✓ When the boys came into the house, their clothes were dirty and one of them had a black eye. They**'d been fighting.**

✓ I was very tired when I got home. **I'd been working** hard all day.

Formation التكوين → in Passive

Object + had + been + P.P

✓ Dinner **had been prepared** by Jana when I came back.

Negative النفي

hadn't been + V + ing

✓ When I went to Madrid, I stayed with a friend of mine. She **hadn't been living** there very long, but she knew the city very well.

Question السؤال

يتكون السؤال بمعني هل في الماضي التام المستمر من

Had الفاعل + been + V + ing ....?

✓ **Had** Jana **been watching** TV all night?

- ✓ Yes, she **had**. - ✗ No, she **hadn't**.

يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في الماضي التام المستمر من:

اداة استفهام + had الفاعل + been + V + ing ....?

✓ What **had** you **been doing** all night? ✓ I **had been revising** all my lessons all night.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

بعض كلمات الماضي التام و أكثر استخدامنا لهذا الزمن يكون مع [all, for, since]

since	منذ	▸ He **was** always busy. He **had been travelling since** 2010.
for	لمدة	▸ When I met him I knew that he **had been waiting** for more than an hour.
How long	كم طول المدة	▸ How long **had** you **been waiting** before Ali came?
all	طوال	▸ I was very tired when I arrived home. **I'd been working** hard all day.

Usage الاستخدام

① يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر للتعبير عن استمرار فعل حتى وقت معين في ماضي

✓ When I got there, they had already been playing for about an hour.
✓ She had been sleeping soundly for many hours before her husband arrived.

② يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر للتعبير عن شيء يحدث في فترة زمنية قبل حدوث شيء اخر

✓ We'd been playing tennis for about half an hour when it started to rain heavily.
✓ Ali went to the doctor last Friday. He hadn't been feeling well for some time.

الفرق بين الماضي التام البسيط والماضي التام المستمر

يستخدم الماضي التام البسيط للتعبير عن ترتيب احداث في الماضي أما الماضي التام المستمر يعبر عن استمرار حدث في الماضي لفترة معينة

وهناك حالات لا نستخدم فيها الماضي التام المستمر ونستخدم بدلاً منها الماضي التام:

① هناك أفعال لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة عموماً و هي أفعال الشعور و الحواس و الملكية و المعرفة.

✓ We were good friends. We had known each other for 10 years.
✓ I was surprised when she cut her hair. She'd had long hair since I first met her.

② إذا ذكرنا عدد مرات حدوث الفعل لا يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر بل نستخدم الماضي التام (لأن الحدث علي فترات متقاطعة):

✓ Ahmed had finished typing three reports all night. (had been finishing x)
✓ She had drunk five cups of tea when I was in my office. (had been drinking x)

③ الأفعال التي لا تستغرق فترة طويلة (لحظية) لا تأتي في الاستمرارية مثل

(break down / stop / close / open / end / finish...)

✓ She was late for the meeting as her car had broken down.

Compare

Present perfect continuous (I have been –ing)

✓ I hope the bus comes soon. I've been waiting for 20 minutes. (*before now*)
✓ James is out of breath. He has been running.

Past perfect continuous (I had been –ing)

✓ At last the bus came. I'd been waiting for 20 minutes (*before the bus came*)
✓ James was out of breath. He had been running.

Compare

was – ing (past continuous) and had been –ing:

✓ It wasn't raining when we went out. The sun was shining. But it had been raining, so the ground was wet.
✓ Katherine was sitting in an armchair resting. She was tired because she'd been working very hard.

Important Notes

① الرابط الزمني when في الماضي

When	ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط +	▶ When I arrived at the station, the train had left.
	ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام +	▶ When I had arrived at the station, the train left.
	ماضي بسيط + ماضي بسيط +	▶ When I arrived, the train left.
	ماضي مستمر + ماضي بسيط +	▶ When I fell, I was playing football.

٢ لاحظ الفرق بين:

in - by - until - since		
in	+ سنة ماضية ,..... ماضي بسيط......	▸ In 2000, I **studied** English.
in	+ سنة مستقبلية,.. مستقبل بسيط...	▸ In 2025, I **will study** English.
by	+ سنة ماضية ,..... ماضي تام.......	▸ By 2000, I **had studied** English.
by	+ سنة مستقبلية ,..... مستقبل تام...	▸ By 2025, I **will have finished** my studies.
until	+ سنة ماضية ,...... ماضي تام......	▸ Until 2000, I **hadn't studied** English.
since	+ سنة ماضية ,...... مضارع تام....	▸ Since 2000, I **have studied** English.

٣ في حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد **(after - before - while - until - since)** يأتي بعدهم **V+ing**

- ✓ Toka had slept most of the way **since leaving** Alex.
- ✓ I had done my homework **before watching** TV.
- ✓ **After doing** his homework, he watched TV.

٤ لاحظ أشكال الماضي البسيط مع:

until - till

الفاعل + didn't + inf.	**until - till**	فاعل had + P.P
الفاعل + wasn't / weren't + صفة / ظرف / اسم	**until - till**	
الفاعل + wasn't / weren't + P.P (**Passive**)	**until - till**	
الفاعل + wouldn't + inf.	**until - till**	
No one + التصريف الثاني للفعل	**until - till**	

- ✓ I **didn't leave** home until my mother **had come**.
- ✓ He **wasn't** sad until he **had met** his wife.
- ✓ I **wasn't promoted** until I **had increased** my target.
- ✓ I **wouldn't leave** the office until I **had checked** that all the doors were locked.
- ✓ No one **left** the office until they **had finished** all tasks.

للحظ اننا يمكننا استخدام زمن الماضي البسيط المثبت قبل **until - till** :

- ✓ I **waited** in the park **until** I found a vacant place.

٥ يمكن استبدال الماضي التام بالماضي البسيط وهذا يعني أنه لا يوجد فاصل زمني كبير بين الحدثين:

- ✓ After I **did** my homework, I **slept**. I **called** him before he **entered**.

٦ لاحظ الفرق بين الماضي المستمر و الماضي التام المستمر:

- ✓ I **was doing** my homework all day yesterday.
- ✓ I **had been doing** my homework all day yesterday before I slept.

٧ لاحظ استخدام **because** في الماضي في الأمثلة التالية:

- ✓ I didn't swim **because** I **had forgotten** my swimming suit.
- ✓ I felt very tired **because** I **had been working** all day.

٨ لابد من مراعاه تسلسل الازمنة

- ⦿ I **went** home and **discovered** that the thief **had stolen** my money.

لاحظ ان السرقة اول حدث في الجملة لذا يوضع في الماضي التام

يمكننا القول ان غالبا ما يكون الحدث بعد الافعال التالية في زمن الماضي التام

discovered - realised - remembered - found out....

٩ لاحظ الاختلاف بين **Having been + P.P (Passive)** **Having + P.P**

- ⦿ **Having done** his homework, he watched TV.
- ⦿ **Haven't been** rewarded, Ali continued working hard.

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 When I rang, he ....
ⓐ has already left ⓑ left ⓒ had already left ⓓ is already left

2 He loved the zoo. He .... wild animals before.
ⓐ had never seen ⓑ has never seen ⓒ never saw ⓓ is never seen

3 Her eyes were red. She ....
ⓐ has been crying ⓑ had been crying ⓒ was crying ⓓ is been crying

4 She found that the old man ....
ⓐ has already left ⓑ had already left ⓒ had already leave ⓓ has already leave

5 Ali went out after he............ his lunch.
ⓐ eats ⓑ has eaten ⓒ have eaten ⓓ had eaten

6 I had finished my work before............ the office.
ⓐ left ⓑ had left ⓒ was leaving ⓓ leaving

7 I found that my old friend .... again.
ⓐ had got married ⓑ has got married ⓒ has marry ⓓ had got marry

8 The house was dirty. She .... it for ages.
ⓐ hadn't cleaned ⓑ hasn't cleaned ⓒ hadn't clean ⓓ hasn't clean

9 When I arrived, the pub was no longer open. It .... down.
ⓐ has closed ⓑ has close ⓒ had close ⓓ had closed

10 She didn't recognise me. I .... quite a lot.
ⓐ had changed ⓑ have changed ⓒ have change ⓓ had change

11 There was a lorry by the house and a car .... near by.
ⓐ had stop ⓑ had stopped ⓒ has stopped ⓓ has stop

12 The place was very quiet. Everybody .... to bed.
ⓐ has gone ⓑ is going ⓒ had gone ⓓ was going

13 My friends were no longer there. They ....
ⓐ have leave ⓑ have left ⓒ had leave ⓓ had left

14 I couldn't catch the train. It ....
ⓐ already left ⓑ already left ⓒ had already left ⓓ has left already

15 The old man said that he............ abroad yet.
ⓐ didn't travel ⓑ hasn't been travelled ⓒ hadn't traveled ⓓ hasn't travelling

Fill in gap:

16 We............ leave the place until he had come.

17 Hardly had he taken the medicine............ he recovered.

18 Having............ the ticket, he took the train.

19 .... got his degree, he worked as an engineer.

20 No sooner............ he stepped on my foot than he apologized to me.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 After finished the reports, he made for the shops. [..............................]

22 He had a good sleep after he had have a heavy lunch. [..............................]

23 When she arrived most of her friends leaves. [..............................]

24 By 2019, I have finished studying English. [..............................]

25 They didn't come. They have arranged something else. [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She was afraid because she .... before.
ⓐ had never flown ⓑ didn't fly ⓒ has never flown ⓓ don't fly

2 How many times .... him before you moved here?
ⓐ you met ⓑ did you meet ⓒ you had met ⓓ had you met

3 Jana didn't want to go to the cinema with us because she............ the movie.
ⓐ 's already seeing ⓑ 's already seen ⓒ 'd already seen ⓓ 'd already see

4 Jana didn't send the message to her father until she .... it.
ⓐ has been writing ⓑ writing ⓒ has written ⓓ had written

5 After............ the front gate, I drove away to the office.
ⓐ locked ⓑ had locked ⓒ being locked ⓓ locking

6 Scarcely .... a new job when he decided to move into a new flat
ⓐ he had found ⓑ was he found ⓒ has he found ⓓ had he found

7 The toy car............ until Samy had thrown it to the ground.
ⓐ didn't destroy ⓑ wasn't destroyed ⓒ doesn't destroy ⓓ was destroyed

8 How many cups of coffee............ before I met you at the café?
ⓐ have you drunk ⓑ had you drunk ⓒ do you drink ⓓ has you drunk

9 No sooner............ the poisoned cakes than he lost consciousness.
ⓐ he had eaten ⓑ he ate ⓒ had he eaten ⓓ does he eat

10 He............ to leave the country until he had renewed his passport.
ⓐ didn't allow ⓑ wasn't allowed ⓒ was allowed ⓓ allowed

11 Everything............ on by the time the meeting was over.
ⓐ has agreed ⓑ had been agreed ⓒ has been agreed ⓓ agreed

12 No sooner............ captured than he escaped again.
ⓐ had he ⓑ he had been ⓒ he had ⓓ had he been

13 Never before .... such a dilemma.
ⓐ faced she ⓑ she had faced ⓒ did she face ⓓ had she faced

14 He was a stranger. I............ him before.
ⓐ had never seen ⓑ have never seen ⓒ had never saw ⓓ have never saw

15 He was no longer running his shop. He .... it.
ⓐ had sold ⓑ has sell ⓒ had sell ⓓ has sold

Fill in gap:

16 My brother said that he had been to France and .... the Eiffel Tower.

17 It .... until she had got permission that she left.

18 No sooner.........the boy fallen off his bicycle than the policeman hurried to help him.

19 Before............ for London, he had paid off his debts.

20 He'd............ come into the room when he died.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 Ahmed had been finishing typing three reports all night. [..............................]

22 On finished my work, I went home. [..............................]

23 After the house had painted, we furnished it. [..............................]

24 He didn't sad until he had met his wife. [..............................]

25 We were good friends. We had been knowing each other for 10 years.[..............................]

3 Advanced Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We .... the car for 6 months before we discovered it was stolen.
ⓐ were owning ⓑ had been owning ⓒ owned ⓓ had owned
2. .... repaired, the car looked a new one.
ⓐ On ⓑ Having been ⓒ Having ⓓ After
3. By 2017, I .... three European countries.
ⓐ visited ⓑ had visited ⓒ had been visiting ⓓ was visiting
4. The sky was cloudy, so it wasn't .... 10 a.m. that the sun appeared.
ⓐ because ⓑ before ⓒ after ⓓ until
5. When we got home last night, we found that somebody .... into the flat.
ⓐ has broken ⓑ was breaking ⓒ broke ⓓ had broken
6. I was very tired when I got home. I .... hard all day.
ⓐ had been working ⓑ had worked ⓒ worked ⓓ has been working
7. As soon as I .... here, I realised that I had been robbed.
ⓐ arrived ⓑ had arrived ⓒ was arriving ⓓ arrive
8. When I arrived, the film .... I didn't watch it.
ⓐ has finished ⓑ finishes ⓒ was finishing ⓓ had finished
9. I didn't buy the mobile .... the shop had been close.
ⓐ until ⓑ since ⓒ before ⓓ after
10. There were three cinemas. They .... another one.
ⓐ have opened ⓑ have open ⓒ had opened ⓓ had open
11. .... in a hurry, the letter was unreadable.
ⓐ Had written ⓑ Having written ⓒ Having been written ⓓ Had written
12. The police .... of the crime soon after it was committed.
ⓐ had informed ⓑ informed ⓒ had been informed ⓓ were informed
13. It was the first time we .... visited the museum.
ⓐ have ever ⓑ have never ⓒ had ever ⓓ have just
14. The police questioned him for three hours before .... him without charge.
ⓐ released ⓑ had released ⓒ being released ⓓ releasing
15. I noticed that he .... anything all evening.
ⓐ didn't say ⓑ hasn't said ⓒ hadn't said ⓓ hadn't told

Fill in gap:

16. He didn't buy a new car............ he had sold the old one.
17. When they arrived, the film .... already begun.
18. He was punished for what he............ done.
19. The criminal .... put in prison until he had confessed all his crimes.
20. After............ my lunch, I like having some sleep.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21. She was afraid because she had ever flown before. [..............................]
22. Have you ever visited the U.S. before your trip in 2006? [..............................]
23. We didn't move into our house since the workers had finished painting it. [.....................]
24. He was annoyed. He had been phoned her all evening. [..............................]
25. Having done, my homework was marked by the teacher. [..............................]

Future forms and tenses
صيغ وأزمنة المستقبل

①	will / shall + inf.	المستقبل البسيط
②	(am - is - are) + going to + inf.	
③	(am - is - are) + v +ing	المضارع المستمر
④	التصريف الأول للفعل (V or V+ s)	المضارع البسيط
⑤	will be +ing	المستقبل المستمر
⑥	will have + P.P	المستقبل التام

① will / shall + inf.

Affirmation الإثبات	will / shall + inf. تأتي shall مع I - we	▸ We **will study** English tomorrow. ▸ I **shall build** a new house next year.
Negative النفي	won't / shan't + inf.	▸ We **won't study** English tomorrow. ▸ I **shan't build** a new house next year.
Question السؤال	will / shall + الفاعل + inf.	▸ **Will** you **study** English tomorrow? ✓ Yes, we **will**. ✗ No, we **won't**. ▸ What **will** you **do** tomorrow?
Passive المبني للمجهول	will / shall be+ P.P	▸ English **will be studied** tomorrow by us. ▸ A new house **will be built** next year.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

وهي كلمات تستخدم مع زمن المستقبل البسيط ولاحظ أنهم يأتوا أول الجملة وأخرها مثل:

tomorrow	غداً	▸ I hope it **won't** rain tomorrow.
next + مدة زمنية	القادم	▸ Next week, we **shall** visit the museum.
in the future	في المستقبل	▸ I **will** travel abroad in the future.
soon	قريباً	▸ They **will** soon speak English well.
shortly	قريباً	▸ Excuse me a moment, I**'ll** be with you shortly.
in a few (months - weeks - days - hours - minutes ...)		▸ I **will** visit my uncle in a few days. ▸ She **will** finish her study in a few months.

Uses الاستخدامات

①	تنبؤات بدون دليل	▸ I **expect** Toka and Jana **will stay** for lunch.
②	حقائق مستقبلية (العمر)	▸ Next year, I **will be** 20 years old.
③	القرارات السريعة	▸ Mona has **just** decided that she **will** leave.
④	العرض	▸ That bag looks heavy. I**'ll** help you with it.
⑤	الوعد	▸ I promise I**'ll** buy you a mobile phone.
⑥	الطلب	▸ **Will** you shut the window?
⑦	للتهديد	▸ Be careful or you **will** hurt yourself
⑧	للتحذير بتهديد	▸ Be quiet or I **will** punish you.
⑨	مع بعض الكلمات مثل think, believe, expect, predict, hope, promise, sure, certainly, probably.	▸ I **hope** I **will** see him tomorrow. ▸ I **expect** he **will** win the race. ▸ I **promise** I **will** visit you tomorrow. ▸ I **think** it **will** rain.

⑩ يستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع الجمل الشرطية if - unless في الحالة الأولى

✓ If I drop this glass, it **will** break. ✓ Unless he studies hard, he **will** fail.

⑪ يستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع الروابط في ازمنة المضارع (after - before - when - until - as soon as....).

مستقبل بسيط
will + inf. ← **after / before / as soon as** → **inf. / inf. + s** (مضارع بسيط) / **have / has + P.P** (مضارع تام)

---

after / before / as soon as → **inf. / inf. + s** (مضارع بسيط) / **have / has + P.P** (مضارع تام) → **will + inf.** (مستقبل بسيط)

- ✓ After I (do) have done my homework, I'll go to bed.
- ✓ As soon as she arrives (has arrived) in London, she will call me.
- ✓ Before he types the reports, he will have dinner.
- ✓ When it gets warmer, the snow will start to melt.

won't + مصدر ← **until** → **inf. / inf. + s** (مضارع بسيط) / **have / has + P.P** (مضارع تام)

- ✓ He won't come until I phone (have phoned) him.
- ✓ I won't leave until I write (have written) this report.

لاحظ الصفات الشخصية لا تعتبر دليل لذا يأتي معها will

- ✓ My brother is intelligent so he will join a good faculty.

② (am - is - are) + going to + inf.

Affirmation الإثبات	(am - is - are) + going to + inf.	She is going to study French as planned. They are going to visit Cairo.
Negative النفي	(am not - isn't - aren't) + going to + inf.	She isn't going to study French as planned. They aren't going to visit Cairo.
Question السؤال	(Am - Is - Are) + الفاعل + going to + inf.	Is she going to study French as planned? ✓ Yes, she is. ✗ No, she isn't.
Passive المبني للمجهول	(am - is - are) + going to be + P.P	French is going to be studied as planned. Cairo is going to be visited.

Uses الاستخدامات

①	تنبؤات مع وجود دليل	▸ Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain. ▸ He can't swim. He is going to drown. ▸ I feel terrible. I think I'm going to be sick.
②	الخطط المستقبلية (plan . made a plan)	▸ Toka is going to play. She has planned that. ▸ I have a plan. I am going to start my project.
③	النوايا (intend - intention)	▸ He is going to visit London. He has intended that. ▸ We are going to visit Cairo. We have intention.
④	القرارات المسبقة (decide- make a decision - made up .... mind)	▸ They have decided they are going to study. ▸ She has made up her mind. She is going to leave. ▸ I've made my decision. I am going to travel abroad.
⑤	أشياء على وشك الحدوث	▸ Watch out! You're going to fall. ▸ Be careful! You are going to break it.

Compare

✓ "Ali phoned while you were out." "OK. I'll call him back."
"Ali phoned while you were out." "Yes, I know. I'm going to call him back."

✓ "Mai is in hospital." "Oh really? I didn't know. I'll go and visit her."
" Mai is in hospital." "Yes, I know. I'm going to visit her this evening."

لاحظ

❶ لاحظ أن بعض الكلمات الدالة علي will إذا جاء دليل نستخدم be going to

think - believe - sure

✓ I think it will rain. ✓ It is cloudy. I think it is going to rain.

❷ لاحظ الصفات الشخصية لا تعتبر دليل اما الصفات المؤقتة تعتبر دليل

✓ My brother is intelligent so he will join a good faculty.
✓ I am very ill so I am going to see a doctor.

③ Future Continuous (am - is - are) + V + ing

Affirmation **الإثبات**	(am - is - are) + V + ing	She is studying French as arranged. They are cooking meals as prepared.
Negative **النفي**	(am not - isn't - aren't) + V+ing	She isn't studying French as arranged. They aren't cooking meals as prepared.
Question **السؤال**	(am - is - are) + الفاعل + V+ ing	Is she studying French as arranged? ✓ Yes, she is. ✗ No, she isn't.
Passive **المبني للمجهول**	(am - is - are) + being + P.P	French is being studied as arranged. Meals are being cooked as prepared.

Uses الاستخدامات

①	للأحداث المرتب لها مع الكلمات (arranged, booked, bought, made arrangements, prepare, all is okay)	He is visiting his uncle. He has arranged. He is catching the 3 o'clock train. He has made arrangements. I am having dinner with Toka. I have booked a table.
②	المناسبات الاجتماعية والأنشطة الرسمية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد / سفر / زيارات / مواعيد شخصية / المسابقات	He's getting married next Friday. The school inspector is coming on Thursday. Our school is taking part in a competition next week.
③	عدم مقدره فعل شيء في المستقبل نتيجة الترتيب لفعل حدث آخر	I can't meet you tomorrow as I am doing the shopping. She can't call you tonight as she is visiting her uncle.

④ Present Simple (inf. or inf. + s)

Affirmation **الإثبات**	(V or V+ s) التصريف الأول للفعل	The English class starts at 7. My train arrives at 7 tomorrow.
Negative **النفي**	(doesn't - don't) + inf.	My train doesn't arrive at 7 tomorrow The English class never starts at 7.
Question **السؤال**	(Does - Do) + الفاعل + inf.	Does the train arrive at 7 o' clock? ✓ Yes, it does. ✗ No, it doesn't.
Passive **المبني للمجهول**	(is - are) + P.P	French is studied at 7 o' clock. Meals are cooked every day.

Uses الاستخدامات

حدث في المستقبل طبقاً لجدول أو تقويم (مواصلات / فتح وغلق / بداية ونهاية / دراسة / سينما / مسرح)	▸ The train **leaves** at 7:30 a.m. ▸ The plane **takes** off at 9 a.m. ▸ Our lesson **starts** at 12 p.m.

⑤ Future Continuous will be + V + ing

Affirmation الإثبات	**will be + V + ing**	▸ She **will be studying** French at 7 tomorrow. ▸ They **will be cooking** meals from 8 to 9 tomorrow.
Negative النفي	**won't be + V + ing**	▸ She **won't be studying** French at 7 tomorrow. ▸ They **won't be cooking** meals from 8 to 9 tomorrow.
Question السؤال	**will الفاعل be + V + ing**	▸ **Will** she **be studying** French at 7 tomorrow? ✓ Yes, she **will**. ✗ No, she **won't**.
Passive المبني للمجهول	**will be + P.P**	▸ French **will be studied** at 7 tomorrow. ▸ Meals **will be cooked** from 8 to 9 tomorrow.
Key words الكلمات الدالة	at.......tomorrow.... at ....next	.....from ...... to This time next.... between......and ... tomorrow morning.....

Uses الاستخدامات

①	يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمراً في نقطة معينة في المستقبل.	▸ At 10 tomorrow, he will be in his office, he **will be working**. ▸ This time tomorrow I **will be sitting** in the cinema. I **will be watching** a movie.
②	يستخدم مع حدث سوف يكون مستمر في وقت معين في المستقبل.	▸ At this time tomorrow, the engine **will be repaired**. ▸ In the future. **I'll be playing** tennis from 7 to 9 p.m. ▸ Don't phone between 7 and 8. We**'ll be having** dinner.
③	للحديث عن ما تم ترتيبها وتخطيطها في المستقبل.	▸ At 9.30 next Tuesday, we **will be attending** her wedding party.

Compare

will be - ing with other continuous forms:

- ✓ At 10 o'clock yesterday, Sally **was** in her office. She **was working**. (**past**)
- ✓ It's 10 o'clock now. She **is** in her office. She **is working**. (**present**)
- ✓ At 10 o'clock tomorrow, she **will be** in her office. She **will be working**. (**future**)

⑥ Future Perfect will have + P.P

Affirmation الإثبات	**will have + P.P**	▸ By next year, I **will have finished** my studies. ▸ She **will have studied** French by 7 tomorrow.
Negative النفي	**won't have + P.P**	▸ By next year, I **won't have finished** my studies. ▸ She **won't have studied** French by 7 tomorrow.
Question السؤال	**will الفاعل have + P.P**	▸ **Will** you **have finished** your studies by next year? ✓ Yes, I **will**. ✗ No, I **won't**.
Passive المبني للمجهول	**will have been + P.P**	▸ By next year, my studies **will have been finished**. ▸ French **will have been studied** by 7 tomorrow.

Giants' Grammar

Key words
الكلمات الدالة

by (سنة قادمة - next....... - tomorrow - ....)
▸ by the time
in......في خلال فترة زمنية
by.. بحلول = before....
This time tomorrow...
in (a year's / four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes') time

Uses الاستخدامات

①	يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف ينتهي في وقت معين في المستقبل.	▸ By the end of this year, I will have finished my study. ▸ His new house will have been built by 2030.
②	يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهى أو تم قبل حدث آخر في المستقبل.	▸ Before our parents come, we will have tidied our room. ▸ In five years, a lot of books will have been published.

Compare

will have (done) with other perfect forms:

✓ Ted and Amy have been married for 24 years. (present perfect)
✓ Next year they will have been married for 25 years. (future perfect)
✓ When their son was born, they had been married for three years. (past perfect)

tricks

ممكن تحاول تفهم و تكتب سبب الاختيار

يا تركاااااااااتك
يا حركاااااااااتك

1. After Ali (had finished - has finished) his work, he will call us.
2. She won't leave until she (has had - had had - has been) her money.
3. It is cloudy. I think (will - is going to) rain.
4. It is cloudy. I (won't - am not going to) go out.
5. The shop (will be opening - opens) from 9 until 6 tomorrow.
6. I think our lesson (starts - will start) at 6 o'clock.
7. She is very clever. She (will - is going to) get full marks.
8. He is very tired. He (will - is going to) see a doctor.
9. The President (will visit - is going to visit - is visiting) Aswan tomorrow.
10. I expect we (shall - are going to) win the cup.
11. After (has call - had called - calling) her, I will tell you what happens.
12. This novel (will be published - will publish - will be come out) soon.
13. I have just decided that I (am going to - will) buy this dress.
14. The water is boiling. I (will - am going to) turn off the cooker.
15. I can't meet you tomorrow as I (will revise - will be revising) my lessons.

Wise Saying

There is no way to happiness.

Happiness is the way

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Look, this glass is cracked It ....
ⓐ is going to break ⓑ is breaking ⓒ will break ⓓ will be breaking

2 The play .... at seven every evening.
ⓐ will begin ⓑ is going to begin ⓒ begins ⓓ is beginning

3 Don't touch that dog. It .... bite you.
ⓐ is ⓑ will ⓒ is going to ⓓ is being

4 How old are you? I .... 16 on Saturday.
ⓐ am being ⓑ is going to be ⓒ will be ⓓ am

5 I............ there for you. Don't worry.
ⓐ am being ⓑ am going to be ⓒ will have been ⓓ will be

6 .... me a favour, please?
ⓐ Will you do ⓑ Are you doing ⓒ Do you do ⓓ Are you going to do

7 Mother............ the house work between 10 a.m. and 2 p.m. tomorrow.
ⓐ is doing ⓑ will have done ⓒ will be doing ⓓ will be

8 I expect they .... the match tomorrow.
ⓐ win ⓑ will win ⓒ are winning ⓓ are going to win

9 We .... studying this book by the end of this year.
ⓐ finish ⓑ will be finishing ⓒ will have finished ⓓ are finishing

10 I think it .... hot today.
ⓐ will be ⓑ will have been ⓒ is going to be ⓓ is being

11 Don't phone me now. I............ a shower.
ⓐ have ⓑ will have had ⓒ will have ⓓ am having

12 Your bags look heavy. I .... you to carry them.
ⓐ will be helped ⓑ am helping ⓒ help ⓓ will help

13 At ten o'clock tomorrow, I .... on a train to Aswan!
ⓐ travel ⓑ will have travelled ⓒ going to travel ⓓ will be travelling

14 By ten o'clock tonight, I............ all my homework.
ⓐ will finish ⓑ is going to finish ⓒ will be finishing ⓓ will have finished

15 I............ with my cousins in Tanta as planned.
ⓐ am staying ⓑ am going to stay ⓒ will be staying ⓓ will stay

Fill in gap:

16 Our team trains hard, I think they............ win the match.
17 This engineer is active. He............ finish the project on time.
18 Today is Friday, so tomorrow............ be Saturday.
19 Amal............ another baby next March.
20 The baby is crying loudly, his mother............ feed him right now.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 In four years' time, she will have been finished her education. [..............................]
22 At five o'clock tomorrow, she will travelling on a train to Alex. [..............................]
23 Watch out! The car will hit you! [..............................]
24 In the future, most of our work will do by machines. [..............................]
25 Our school takes part in the sports competition next week. [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 They .... a new factory in this area by the end of 2030.
ⓐ will have built ⓑ will be building ⓒ will build ⓓ are building

2 Toka is clever. I think she .... the full mark.
ⓐ is going to get ⓑ will have got ⓒ will get ⓓ will be getting

3 I can't talk at the moment. I............ my homework.
ⓐ do ⓑ will do ⓒ am doing ⓓ have done

4 I won't be able to talk to you all the day tomorrow because I .... my homework.
ⓐ would be doing ⓑ will have done ⓒ will be doing ⓓ may do

5 This time next year, I .... at university.
ⓐ will study ⓑ will be studied ⓒ will be studying ⓓ will have studied

6 The school inspector............ on Thursday.
ⓐ will come ⓑ is coming ⓒ is going to come ⓓ comes

7 I've enrolled on an English course. It .... on Sunday of next week.
ⓐ will start ⓑ is starting ⓒ is going to start ⓓ starts

8 Mother............ the house work between 10 a.m. and 2 p.m. tomorrow.
ⓐ is doing ⓑ will have done ⓒ will be doing ⓓ will be

9 By 2030, new well-paid jobs .... available in Egypt.
ⓐ will be ⓑ will have been ⓒ had been ⓓ were being

10 It's 35 degrees and it's only 7 a.m. It .... very hot today.
ⓐ was ⓑ is going to be ⓒ is being ⓓ will be being

11 Look, there's a sandstorm. I .... the windows.
ⓐ will be closing ⓑ am going to close ⓒ will have closed ⓓ will close

12 They've got the tickets. They............ to England!
ⓐ are flying ⓑ will fly ⓒ will have flew ⓓ will be flying

13 I............ to the book fair to buy the books I need This is my intention.
ⓐ will have gone ⓑ am going to go ⓒ am going ⓓ will go

14 By next month, my elder brother .... for 10 years.
ⓐ will be marrying ⓑ is going to marry ⓒ will marry ⓓ will have been married

15 If you like, I .... the salad.
ⓐ am making ⓑ will make ⓒ am going to make ⓓ makes

Fill in gap:

16 What time............ your plane take off?
17 I am sure I .... climb this mountain soon.
18 Tidy your room or I .... let you go to club.
19 After I have studied, I .... watch TV.
20 She is flying to London next week, her flight .... off at 7 a.m.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 I would be18 next Monday. [..............................]
22 According to the timetable, the next bus will move at 10 a.m. [..............................]
23 The cup is on the edge of the table. It will fall. [..............................]
24 It is very hot in the house. I am going to turn on the air conditioner. [..............................]
25 Don't be late. The bus leave at exactly ten o'clock! [..............................]

3 Advanced Exercises

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I feel terrible with a severe stomach. I think I............ be sick.
ⓐ should ⓑ am going to ⓒ am to ⓓ will

2 Her wedding party .... held next Sunday.
ⓐ is being ⓑ will be ⓒ is going to be ⓓ will have

3 I've bought a new suit. I............ it at the party tonight.
ⓐ am going to wear ⓑ would wear ⓒ will wear ⓓ am wearing

4 Toka .... married next June. All is well for the wedding.
ⓐ gets ⓑ is getting ⓒ got ⓓ will get

5 She .... tomorrow evening. She has packed her bags.
ⓐ is leaving ⓑ leave ⓒ will leave ⓓ have left

6 Scientists say that by 2020, the glaciers in Montana............ .
ⓐ are melting ⓑ will have melted ⓒ melt ⓓ have melted

7 Sorry, I can't come because I .... tennis with Yehia tomorrow.
ⓐ am going to play ⓑ will have played ⓒ will play ⓓ am playing

8 By 2025, the ICDL certificate .... by hundreds of millions.
ⓐ earned ⓑ will have been earned
ⓒ have earned ⓓ will have earned

9 They've got the tickets; they .... to London.
ⓐ will have flown ⓑ are going to fly ⓒ are flying ⓓ will fly

10 I can't meet you tonight as I .... for the exam.
ⓐ going to revise ⓑ will have been revised ⓒ will revise ⓓ am revising

11 My brother is intelligent. He............ the maths exam easily.
ⓐ will pass ⓑ is going to pass ⓒ is passing ⓓ going to pass

12 I didn't charge my mobile phone. The battery............ out.
ⓐ will run ⓑ shall run ⓒ is going to run ⓓ runs

13 This old-aged tree isn't safe to sit under. It............ at any time.
ⓐ will fall ⓑ is falling ⓒ is going to fall ⓓ falls

14 A: We have not got any sugar. B: I know, I............ some this evening.
ⓐ will buy ⓑ am going to buy ⓒ will be buying ⓓ will have bought

15 I .... Ali tomorrow morning. He accepted my invitation and booked a flight.
ⓐ will meet ⓑ am meeting ⓒ am going to meet ⓓ meet

Fill in gap:

16 The museum typically .... at 8 a.m.

17 My little grandchild .... be three next Friday.

18 The water is boiling. I .... turn the gas off.

19 The next Olympic Games .... in London.

20 A new bridge .... built here by the government by the end of this year.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 The sky is too dark, I am not going to go for a walk. [..............................]

22 I am going out tomorrow. I haven't decided yet. [..............................]

23 There's a train leaves at six o'clock tomorrow. I hope I will catch it. [..............................]

24 Ahmed has an appointment with a dentist. He will see doctor next Monday. [....................]

25 Watch out! You cut yourself. [..............................]

صيغ المبني للمجهول

Passive Forms

المفعول + V. be + P.P. + by + الفاعل

am - is - are
was - were
be - been - being

التصريف الثالث للفعل
V +ed
أو أفعال غير منتظمة

1) Present Passive Forms

Tense	Active معلوم	Passive مجهول
Present Simple المضارع البسيط	(v / v + s) ▸ Jana **watches** TV.	(am - is - are) + p.p. ▸ TV **is watched** by Jana.
Present continuous المضارع المستمر	(am - is - are) + v + ing ▸ Jana **is watching** TV.	(am - is - are) + being + p.p. ▸ TV **is being watched** by Jana.
Present Perfect المضارع التام	(have - has) + p.p. ▸ Jana **has watched** TV.	(have - has) + been + p.p. ▸ TV **has been watched** by Jana.
Present Perfect continuous مضارع تام مستمر	(have - has) + been + v+ ing ▸ Jana **has been watching** TV.	(have - has) + been + p.p. ▸ TV **has been watched** by Jana.

2) Future Passive Forms

Tense	Active معلوم	Passive مجهول
Future Simple المستقبل البسيط	will + inf. ▸ Jana **will watch** TV.	will be + p.p. ▸ TV **will be watched** by Jana.
Future continuous المستقبل المستمر	will be + v + ing ▸ Jana **will be watching** TV.	will be + p.p. ▸ TV **will be watched** by Jana.
Future Perfect المستقبل التام	will have + p.p ▸ Jana **will have watched** TV.	will have been + p.p. ▸ TV **will have been watched** by Jana.

3) Past Passive Forms

Tense	Active معلوم	Passive مجهول
Past Simple الماضي البسيط	v+ed / التصريف الثاني للفعل ▸ Jana **watched** TV.	(was - were) + p.p. ▸ TV **was watched** by Jana.
Past continuous الماضي المستمر	(was - were) + v + ing ▸ Jana **was watching** TV.	(was - were) + being + p.p. ▸ TV **was being watched** by Jana.
Past Perfect الماضي التام	had + p.p. ▸ Jana **had watched** TV.	had + been + p.p. ▸ TV **had been watched** by Jana.
Past Perfect continuous الماضي التام المستمر	had + been + v+ ing ▸ Jana **had been watching** TV.	had + been + p.p. ▸ TV **had been watched** by Jana.

4) The Passive Infinitive

word	meaning	Active معلوم	Passive مجهول
must	يجب أن	must + inf.	must + be + p.p
need to	يحتاج أن	need to + inf.	need to + be + p.p
should / ought to	يجب أن	should / ought to + inf.	should / ought to + be + p.p
can / could	يستطيع / استطاع	can / could + inf.	can / could + be + p.p
may / might	ربما	may / might+ inf.	may / might + be + p.p
(am-is-are) going to	سوف	(am-is-are) going to+ inf.	(am-is-are) going to + be+ p.p
have to / has to	يجب أن	have to / has to + inf.	have to / has to + be + p.p
had to	كان يجب أن	had to + inf.	had to + be + p.p
will have to	سوف ينبغي أن	will have to + inf.	will have to + be+ p.p
am to / is to / are to	يجب أن	am to /is to/ are to + inf.	am to / is to / are to+ be+ p.p
was to / were to	كان يجب أن	was to/ were to + inf.	was to / were to + be + p.p
أي فعل + to	أفعال بعدها to والمصدر	V + to+ inf.	V + to + be + p.p
be able to	قادر علي	be able to + inf.	be able to + be + p.p
be about to	يكون علي وشك	be about to + inf.	be about to + be + p.p
used to	اعتاد ان	used to + inf.	used to + be + p.p

5) Special cases

أثرى معلوماتك

- للاحظ طريقة تحويل الجمل الآتية إلى المبني للمجهول .
- الأفعال التي يليها مفعول ثم مصدر بدون to عند التحويل للمجهول نأتي ب to قبل المصدر
- للاحظ طريقة تحويل الجمل الآتية إلى المبني للمجهول.

Active ▸ He will make us leave. **Passive** ▸ We will be made to leave.

- للاحظ الأفعال التي يليها مفعول ثم مصدر مع to

Active ▸ He teaches them to write well.
Passive ▸ They are taught to write well.
Active ▸ I'd like you to introduce me to the new manager.
Passive ▸ I'd like to be introduced to the new manager.

- في حالة وجود فعل مضاف له (ing) نستخدم في المبني للمجهول (being + P.P)

Active ▸ I don't like people telling me what to do.
Passive ▸ I don't like being told what to do.
Active ▸ He went into the building without anyone seeing him.
Passive ▸ He went into the building without being seen (by anyone).

الجملة الأمرية
Passive

- فى الإثبات نستخدم:

Let + مفعول + be + p.p

Active ▸ Open the door.
Passive ▸ Let the door be opened. **Or** The door should be opened.

- وفى النفى نستخدم:

Don't let + مفعول + be + p.p

Active ▸ Don't open the door.
Passive ▸ Don't let the door be opened.

ملاحظات هامة علي المبني للمجهول

❶ تحويلات المبني للمجهول مع كلمة let

✓ He **let** me answer the question.

= let → (be) allowed to + مصدر

✓ I **was allowed to** answer the question.

✓ He **let** people cheat him.

للحظ في حالة وجود Let والفاعل هو نفسه المفعول نستخدم الشكل التالي:

(فاعل + let + ضمير منعكس + be + p.p.)

✓ He **let** himself **be cheated**.

❷ يمكن مع بعض الأفعال استبدال (be) بـ (get) في زمن الجملة

✓ The police **arrested** the thief.

✓ The thief **(was / got) arrested** by the police.

✓ She **got divorced** in 2015.

❸ لاحظ الفرق:

✓ I **will have answered** the question.
✓ The question **will have been answered**.

✓ I **will have to answer** the question.
✓ The question **will have to be answered**.

❹ لاحظ التراكيب التالية تعامل معاملة الفعل الناقص:

be going to / be allowed to / be supposed to / had better / would rather / be to / be about to

✓ I **am going to** answer the question.
✓ The question **is going to be** answered.

✓ The problem is about **to be solved**.

تحول التراكيب الآتية في المبنى للمجهول كالآتي:

People

say - know

believe - think
report - expect -
predict- allege

deny
understand
suppose
announce

❶ **It (is - was - has been - had been) + p.p that** — وضع it محل المفعول

استخدام فاعل الجملة الثانية

❷ المضارع: **Subject + (v.be) + p.p + to + (inf)**

الماضي: **Subject + (v.be) + p.p + to have + p.p**

استخدام مفعول الجملة الثانية

❸ المضارع: **object + (v.be) + p.p + to + be + p.p**

الماضي: **object + (v.be) + p.p + to have been + p.p**

زمن الجملة في المضارع

Active	**People expect that Ahmed will win the match.**
Passive❶	▸ It is expected that Ahmed will win the match.
Passive❷	▸ Ahmed is expected to win the match.
Passive❸	▸ The match is expected to be won by Ahmed.

زمن الجملة في الماضي

Active	**People said that Toka studied English.**
Passive❶	▸ It was said that Toka studied English.
Passive❷	▸ Toka was said to have studied English.
Passive❸	▸ English was said to have been studied by Toka.

شرطين لابد من توافرهم في الجملة المبنية للمجهول:

❶ لابد أن تحتوي الجملة علي V.be وهم 8 تصريفات ويتم الاختياري ما بينهم طبقا للزمن.

(am - is - are - was - were - be - been - being)

❷ لابد أن نختار التصريف الثالث للفعل بإضافة ed أو حفظ الأفعال الشاذة.

كيف يمكننا معرفة أن الجملة مبنية للمجهول؟ ويوجد بعض الصيغ نعلم منها أن الجملة مبنية للمجهول

الفاعل by......... مفعول غير عاقل
...... to .... مفعول عاقل
It .... that ......

هذا الجدول يساعد في التعامل مع سؤال اللاختياري في أسئلة المبني للمجهول

التصريف الثالث	في المجهول V.be صيغة	زمن الفعل	كلمات وروابط دالة علي الزمن
P.P.	(am - is - are)	مضارع بسيط	every - always - never - often -....
	(am - is - are) being	مضارع مستمر	now - look - listen - at the moment..
	(have - has) been	مضارع تام	for - since - just - already - yet - recently - never -...
	was - were	ماضي بسيط	yesterday.... ago - last....- in + سنة سابقة
	(was - were) being	ماضي مستمر	... yesterday - while - as - just as - when
	had been	ماضي تام	after - as soon as - because - before - by the time... - no sooner - when
	الفعل الناقص + be	الأفعال الناقصة	(will - would - can - could - shall -should - may - might - must - have to - has to...)
	is to be	be to	is to / are to / was to / were to.
	V + to + be	V + to	أفعال يأتي بعدها المصدر to مثل promise - hope
	V + being	V + ing	أفعال يأتي بعدها ing مثل admit - suggest
	is - was - has been - had been - will be	It ... that	طبقاً لزمن الجملة الثانية.

tricks

ممكن تحاول تفهم وتكتب سبب الاختيار

يا تركااااااااااااتك
يا حركااااااااااااتك

1. A lot of cars (produced - **are produced**) in Japan.
2. A lot of cars (**produced** - are produced) in Japan, are of a good quality.
3. He could escape without (be seen - seen - **being seen**).
4. The thief was thought (**to have killed** - to have been killed) the little boy.
5. The thief was supposed to (be arrested - **have been arrested**) by the police.
6. (**Being arrested** - be arrested) by the police, the thief was sent to prison.
7. When (**done** - doing), our homework was corrected by my teacher.
8. I'd like my new house (to build - **to be built** - being built) in the city center.
9. I borrowed my brother's car while I (was repairing my car - was being repaired - **was having my car repaired**) at the mechanic's.
10. (Having arrested - **Having been arrested**) by the police, the thief was taken to prison.

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark 25 قيم نفسك

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

❶ Money............ to Egypt by the tourists.
ⓐ brings ⓑ is bringing ⓒ is brought ⓓ are brought

❷ Nothing else............ to stop the merchants' fighting yesterday, Unfortunately, one of them was killed.
ⓐ didn't do ⓑ is done ⓒ wasn't done ⓓ was done

❸ English, ... by millions of people worldwide, is an international language.
ⓐ is spoken ⓑ spoken ⓒ speaking ⓓ to be spoken

❹ English............ all over the world nowadays.
ⓐ is spoken ⓑ has spoken ⓒ speaks ⓓ is speaking

❺ In Egypt, electricity............ from the High Dam.
ⓐ generated ⓑ has generated ⓒ is generated ⓓ will be generated

❻ Since the bridge............ , it will help the traffic flow.
ⓐ was built ⓑ has been built ⓒ has built ⓓ will be built

❼ This organization............ in Egypt, but has branches in many other countries.
ⓐ is based ⓑ basing ⓒ has based ⓓ based

❽ It .... that an accident took place on the Ring Road.
ⓐ reported ⓑ reports ⓒ had reported ⓓ has been reported

❾ Our students were believed .... less effectively last year.
ⓐ to be studying ⓑ that they studied ⓒ to have studied ⓓ to study

❿ He ate everything that .... on the table.
ⓐ is leaving ⓑ was left ⓒ were left ⓓ is left

⓫ I hope this book ....
ⓐ will find ⓑ will be found ⓒ were found ⓓ had been found

⓬ Scientific articles .... in this paper.
ⓐ be published ⓑ are being publish ⓒ are published ⓓ have published

⓭ A woman's work .... never done.
ⓐ is ⓑ will ⓒ would ⓓ were

⓮ When he returned home, his lunch ....
ⓐ is being made ⓑ was being made ⓒ had made ⓓ has been made

⓯ The "Days" .... by Taha Hussein.
ⓐ was written ⓑ were written ⓒ was writing ⓓ had written

Fill in gap:

⓰ These reports .... written last week.
⓱ How much money .... stolen yesterday?
⓲ Where .... these shoes made?
⓳ Children .... supposed to smoke.
⓴ After a thorough examination, the patient .... sent home.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

㉑ A liar doesn't believe when he tells the truth. [..............................]
㉒ This story is knew to everybody as the name of the first space pioneer. [..............................]
㉓ The thieves weren't see by anyone. [..............................]
㉔ Everything has done before you came. [..............................]
㉕ English has spoken all over the world. [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. His wife is ill so their house............ every day.
ⓐ isn't cleaned ⓑ doesn't clean ⓒ wasn't cleaned ⓓ didn't clean

2. .... that Egypt is a great country.
ⓐ It is known ⓑ It knows ⓒ It is knowing ⓓ Egypt is known

3. I was advised............ by a doctor, but it was not possible.
ⓐ seeing ⓑ to be seen ⓒ to see ⓓ being seen

4. Her book .... , so she is unable to do my exercises.
ⓐ was lost ⓑ is losing ⓒ has been lost ⓓ has got lost

5. Doctors............ to do their best in case of emergency.
ⓐ are asked ⓑ have asked ⓒ asked ⓓ are asking

6. The school rules............ be followed.
ⓐ have ⓑ have been ⓒ have to ⓓ have to been

7. Not much............ about this complicated subject.
ⓐ has known ⓑ are being known ⓒ is going to know ⓓ is known

8. Nothing............ to save the prisoner.
ⓐ Did ⓑ done ⓒ was done ⓓ was doing

9. I............ to the tennis competition at the weekend.
ⓐ was taking ⓑ took ⓒ was taken ⓓ had taken

10. She didn't go to school, but............ at home.
ⓐ was learnt ⓑ was learning ⓒ taught ⓓ was taught

11. He read the report which............ to him.
ⓐ sent ⓑ was sending ⓒ has sent ⓓ was sent

12. I'll buy a new house as soon as the old one............ sold.
ⓐ was ⓑ has ⓒ will be ⓓ has been

13. A famous player............ to be hurt after a city centre road accident.
ⓐ believes ⓑ is believed ⓒ believed ⓓ has believed

14. The pyramids, ... by the Pharaohs, attract the world till now.
ⓐ built ⓑ build ⓒ were built ⓓ are built

15. I hope that the truth .... out very soon.
ⓐ will find ⓑ will be finding ⓒ is found ⓓ will be found

Fill in gap:

16. Have all the sandwiches .... eaten?
17. I was given this watch .... my aunt.
18. The telephone .... invented by Bell in 1876.
19. Lazy students are used to things............ done for them.
20. I .... sent for shopping yesterday.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21. By the time we came to the bookshop, all books had be sold. [..............................]
22. All the apple juice drank by nine o'clock. [..............................]
23. The house is going to knock down. [..............................]
24. The situation is serious. Something must done before it's too late. [..............................]
25. I didn't believe what had said. [..............................]

3 Advanced Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He should .... that today is Sunday.
   ⓐ been told ⓑ had been told ⓒ have been told ⓓ have being told
2. The men .... after the explosion.
   ⓐ are said to be arrested ⓑ said to be arrested
   ⓒ are said to being arrested ⓓ are said to have been arrested
3. Four people .... in a train crash.
   ⓐ have been killed ⓑ have killed ⓒ are killed ⓓ was killed
4. The Nobel Prize winner is going .... the keys of the city.
   ⓐ to have given ⓑ to be given ⓒ have giving ⓓ to be giving
5. You can't come in. She .... interviewed for the TV.
   ⓐ is ⓑ is being ⓒ was ⓓ has been
6. Please go away. I want .... left alone.
   ⓐ been ⓑ be ⓒ to be ⓓ being
7. Many magnificent palaces and museums .... in our city lately.
   ⓐ have built ⓑ has built ⓒ has been built ⓓ have been built
8. The people next door disappeared 6 months ago. They .... since then.
   ⓐ aren't seen ⓑ haven't been seen ⓒ weren't seen ⓓ weren't being seen
9. It is winter. Everything .... with snow.
   ⓐ is covered ⓑ were covered ⓒ will cover ⓓ are covered
10. Don't touch the door, it .... painted.
    ⓐ is just ⓑ has just been ⓒ will just be ⓓ have just been
11. The movie .... yesterday was really thrilling and horrifying.
    ⓐ which shown ⓑ which showed ⓒ shown ⓓ which was showing
12. The villa was very large and took four months............ .
    ⓐ being painted ⓑ to be painted ⓒ to paint ⓓ be painted
13. .... in a car accident, she never wanted to drive again.
    ⓐ Being injuring ⓑ Injured ⓒ Injure ⓓ Being Injured
14. Ali is looking forward to............ as the best player.
    ⓐ being chosen ⓑ choose ⓒ choosing ⓓ be chosen
15. Don't let yourself ....
    ⓐ cheated ⓑ cheating ⓒ be cheated ⓓ being cheated

Fill in gap:

16. The motorist was finally arrested after .... chased for half an hour.
17. This school .... closed next year.
18. He wants this job .... done today.
19. The news .... given on the radio at this moment.
20. This kind of shops .... called a milk bar.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21. Nobody likes to being sent for at night. [..............................]
22. The special information aren't published in the newspapers yesterday. [..............................]
23. If you leave money there, it will steal. [..............................]
24. Houses are building very quickly now. [..............................]
25. Having done,our homework was marked by Al Daifi. [..............................]

Relative clauses عبارات الوصل

عاقل ← who = that → فعل

بمعنى (الذي / التي) وتحل محل الفاعل العاقل (يأتي بعدها فعل) ولا يمكن حذفها

- ✓ An architect is someone **who** (**that**) designs buildings.
- ✓ My uncle Ali, **who** is a businessman, lives in Cairo.
- ✓ The woman **who** lives next door is a doctor.
- ✓ We know a lot of people **who** (**that**) live in the country.

عاقل ← who = that → فاعل

بمعنى (الذي / التي) وتحل محل المفعول العاقل (يأتي بعدها فاعل ويمكن حذفها)

- ✓ The person, **who** she's visiting, is her uncle.
- ✓ The woman **who** I wanted to see was away on holiday.
- ✓ Do you know the woman **who** (**that**) Ali is talking to?

عاقل ← whom = that → فاعل

بمعنى (الذي / التي) تحل محل المفعول العاقل ويمكن حذفها ولابد أن يأتي بعدها فاعل ويمكن أن يأتي معها حرف جر

- ✓ The man **whom** you saw in the party is my brother.
- ✓ Ali is a person **whom** (**that**) I admire very much.
- ✓ I like the people **with whom** I work.

غير عاقل أو (مكان يعامل كشيء) ← which = that → فعل

بمعنى (الذي / التي) وتحل محل فاعل غير عاقل

- ✓ I bought a car **which** is new.
- ✓ Toka told me about her new job, **which** she's enjoying a lot.

غير عاقل أو (مكان يعامل كشيء) ← which = that → فاعل

بمعنى (الذي/التي) وتحل محل مفعول غير عاقل (ويمكن حذفها)

- ✓ The food **which** you cook tastes delicious.
- ✓ We stayed at the Park Hotel, **which** a friend of ours recommended.
- ✓ Yesterday, we visited the City Museum, **which** I'd never been to before.

مكان أو (شيء يستخدم كمكان) ← where = (in - at) which = which... (in - at) → فعل

بمعني " حيث" وتعود على المكان ولابد أن يأتي بعدها فاعل (لا يأتي بعدها فعل)

- ✓ This is the room **where (in which)** I sleep **(which** I sleep **in)**.
- ✓ The restaurant **where** we had lunch was near the airport.
- ✓ I recently went back to the town **where** I grew up.
- ✓ I would like to live in a place **where** there is plenty of sunshine.

اسم (عاقل أو غير عاقل) **whose** اسم (عاقل أو غير عاقل)

تحل محل الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم (أي لا يأتي بعدها فعل مطلقا)

- ✓ I visit Nada **whose** father is an engineer.
- ✓ A window is a woman **whose** husband is dead.
- ✓ What's the name of the man **whose** car you borrowed?
- ✓ I met someone **whose** brother I went to school with.

فاعل (on - in - at) which = **when** زمن

بمعني " حين / حينما "ولابد أن يأتي بعدها فاعل أو مفعول.

- ✓ Friday is the day **when** (**on which**) we get up late.
- ✓ June is the month **when** (**in which**) we don't go to school.

Note **the day / the year / the time ....etc.** **(something happens)**

- ✓ I can't meet you on Friday. That's the day (**that**) I'm going away.
- ✓ The last time (**that**) I saw Anna, she looked great.
- ✓ I haven't seen Jack and Helen since the year (**that**) they got married.

فاعل **what** فعل

بمعني " ما / ماذا "و تربط بفعل.

- ✓ Do you understand **what** I am saying?
- ✓ We'd better decide **what** we need to buy.
- ✓ Did you hear **what** they said?

فاعل / فعل **that** عاقل / غير عاقل

- ✓ Do you know anyone **who / that** speaks French and Italian?
- ✓ Grace works for a company **which / that** makes furniture.

لا تستخدم (**that**) في الجمل الاعتراضية بعد (,):

- ✓ John, **who** (**not that**) speaks French and Italian, works as a tour guide.
- ✓ Anna told me about her new job, **which (not that)** she's enjoying a lot.
- ✓ Cairo, **which** is the capital, is very crowded.

هناك حالات لابد أن نستخدم فيها (**that**) :

أ- إذا كانت أي من الكلمات التالية تصف الاسم الذي يعود عليه ضمير الوصل

all - any - some - every - only - many - much - few

- ✓ I lent her **all** the money **that** she needed.
- ✓ **Everything that** they said was true.
- ✓ I gave her **all** the money **that** I had.

ب- مع صفات التفضيل

- ✓ The fox is **the cleverest** animal **that** I have ever seen.

ج- إذا كانت تعود على عاقل وغير عاقل في نفس الوقت.

- ✓ I told him about **the leaders and the places that** I admired.

Omission of relative pronouns

خد بـــالك

❶ يتم حذف كل من (who - which - whom) عندما يحلوا محل مفعول (اي إذا جاء بعدهم فاعل):

✓ This is the woman **who** I helped. = This is the woman I helped.

❷ يمكن حذف كل من (who - which) إذا جاء بعدهم فعل في الحالات التالية:

أـ اذا جاء بعدهم فعل مبني للمعلوم وفي هذه الحالة يتم حذف الضمير و اضافة (v+ing) أما أذا (be) يحذف ويتبقى (v+ing):

✓ The girl **who** is eating ice cream comes first.
= The girl **eating** ice cream comes first.

✓ Everyone, **who** entered the building, was searched by nthe police.
= Everyone **entering** the building was searched by nthe police.

بـ إذا جاء بعدهم صيغة مبنى للمجهول وهنا نحذف أيضا الضمير و(verb to be) ويبقي التصريف الثالث للفعل.

✓ The man **who** is called Omer helps the poor.
= The man **called** Omer helps the poor.

Important Notes

❶ تحل which محل المكان إذا استخدم كشيء أو وصف. وتحل where بعد الغير عاقـل إذا استخدم كمكان.

✓ This is my house **which** I bought.
✓ This is my house **which** is quite big. (which is new)
✓ This is my bag **where** I put my books. (which is old)

❷ يمكننا استخدم حروف جر قبل (which - whom) مثل (in - on - at - to - for - by) طبقاً للمعني

✓ Can you tell me **for which** (why) you were absent yesterday?
✓ The train **by which** I came arrived late.
✓ She went to meetings **at which** she learnt how to read and write.
✓ He said something **for which** he should apologize.
✓ I read an article **in which** the writer expresses his opinion of globalization.
✓ Ali is the boy **by whom** I was helped.
✓ She asked me where I had been, **to which** I replied, "I can't tell you."
✓ Fortunately we had a good map, **without which** we would have got lost.

❸ لابد من تحديد علي ماذا يعود ضمير الوصل ومراعاة حروف جر كما يلي

✓ I played a **match** with my friend, **which** was exciting.

رغم وجود عاقل قبل ضمير الوصل إلا ان ضمير الوصل يعود علي المباراة.

✓ I met **Ahmed** in the street **who** was very tired.

رغم وجود مكان قبل ضمير الوصل الا أن ضمير الوصل يعود الشخص.

❹ لا يمكننا استخدم حرف جر قبل (who - that) يمكننا ان يأتي بعدهم حرف جر أو آخر الجملة.

✓ This is my friend **who** I play **with**. This is my pen **that** I write **with**.

tricks ممكن تحاول تفهم و تكتب سبب الاختيار

يا تركاااااااااااتك
يا حركااااااااتك

❶ Aswan is an amazing city (**which** - where) many tourists visit.
❷ I like the films (which I watched them - **I watched**) with her.
❸ He told me (what - **why**) he was absent.
❹ I told him all (which - **that**) I know.
❺ The car (repairing - **repaired** - was repaired)by the mechanic, is mine.
❻ Ali (**who's** - whose) clever, always gets high marks.
❼ I read a book (which - **in which**) the main character was a young boy.

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 This is the man .... flat we are all staying in.
ⓐ who ⓑ whose ⓒ in whose ⓓ in which

2 Mona is the kind of person............ likes and dislikes differ from mine.
ⓐ who's ⓑ whose ⓒ whom ⓓ which

3 What did you do with the money............ your mother lent you?
ⓐ where ⓑ which ⓒ who ⓓ whose

4 Sham El-Nesiem is a day............ marks the beginning of spring.
ⓐ in which ⓑ which ⓒ who ⓓ whose

5 The man to............ I spoke is a foreigner.
ⓐ who ⓑ whom ⓒ which ⓓ whose

6 Have you seen............ she bought from the book fair?
ⓐ what ⓑ that ⓒ which ⓓ when

7 The man, ... the car, is called Seif.
ⓐ that is driving ⓑ driven ⓒ driving ⓓ who driving

8 Many goods .... in all over the world are made in China.
ⓐ which is sold ⓑ which sold ⓒ selling ⓓ sold

9 I came to apologize for .... I had done. I hope you will forgive me.
ⓐ which ⓑ that ⓒ when ⓓ what

10 Ali is the boy by .... I was helped.
ⓐ whose ⓑ who ⓒ whom ⓓ that

11 2017 is the year .... which my son was born.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ by

12 The woman............ the wallet was stolen, called the police.
ⓐ from who ⓑ whom ⓒ whose ⓓ from whom

13 Tourists .... stay cost much, moved to a cheaper hotel.
ⓐ whose ⓑ who ⓒ who's ⓓ whom

14 I've hidden the money .... no one will find it.
ⓐ when ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ whom

15 Did you understand .... he explained?
ⓐ that ⓑ which ⓒ whose ⓓ what

Fill in gap:

16 The lady, ... is sitting in the wheelchair, is my grandmother.

17 Uncle Ali earns a fortune, ... is why I've asked him to lend me £1,000.

18 I gave him a drink of water, ... he drank thirstily.

19 That's the man............ wife left him because he kept his pet snake in their bedroom.

20 She asked me where I had been, ... I replied, " It's a secret".

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 The students who test grades were low had to take extra lessons. [..............................]

22 The nurse who's responsibility is to look after children, looks cheerful. [..............................]

23 He bought all the tools requiring to fix his old car. [..............................]

24 The hotel,where is in the centre of the town, is to be knocked down. [..............................]

25 This is Aya about whose I talked to you. [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I saw a man............ car was damaged in an accident.
ⓐ what ⓑ which ⓒ whose ⓓ who

2 George showed me some pictures .... by his father.
ⓐ painting ⓑ painted ⓒ were painted ⓓ they were painted

3 Sarah couldn't meet us, ... was a shame.
ⓐ that ⓑ it ⓒ what ⓓ which

4 I don't like stories .... have unhappy endings.
ⓐ that ⓑ they ⓒ which ⓓ who

5 What's the name of the man ....?
ⓐ you borrowed his car ⓑ which car you borrowed
ⓒ whose car you borrowed ⓓ his car you borrowed

6 The police found the car .... owner teaches us English.
ⓐ whom ⓑ where ⓒ in which ⓓ whose

7 This is the city............ witnessed the summit.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ in which

8 Everyone............ the building, was searched by the police.
ⓐ entering ⓑ entered ⓒ enters ⓓ who enter

9 He said "I'm sorry" .... he meant I do apologize .
ⓐ for which ⓑ which ⓒ to which ⓓ by which

10 I really don't like food............ in deep fat.
ⓐ fried ⓑ which fried ⓒ is fried ⓓ frying

11 The people .... next door to me are very noisy.
ⓐ who living ⓑ living ⓒ are living ⓓ live

12 I usually do............ I promise.
ⓐ which ⓑ when ⓒ what ⓓ who

13 Nada made a suggestion .... Nasr objected.
ⓐ which ⓑ to which ⓒ that ⓓ on which

14 The books .... by Agatha Christie, were made into films.
ⓐ written ⓑ were written ⓒ had been written ⓓ were writing

15 The girl............ in the last row made too much noise.
ⓐ who sitting ⓑ sitting ⓒ who sit ⓓ was sitting

Fill in gap:

16 The men, with............ I lived in London were brave.
17 People............ income is low can hardly afford the high cost of living.
18 I found the book............ which you looked.
19 This school is only for children............ first language is not Arabic.
20 I don't know............ called you.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 The house where we used to live in was old. [..............................]
22 I read an article which the life of a famous woman is described. [..............................]
23 Many goods selling in Africa and Europe are made in China. [..............................]
24 I like the manager whose kind and co-operative. [..............................]
25 This is the football team who members have won gold medals. [..............................]

3 Advanced Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My mum admired the car............ .
ⓐ I bought ⓑ that I bought it ⓒ which I bought for ⓓ I bought it

2 Ahmed............ come first, is my cousin.
ⓐ who ⓑ Who's ⓒ whose ⓓ doesn't

3 The Eastern Desert, ... is very dry, has very little wildlife.
ⓐ where ⓑ who ⓒ when ⓓ which

4 Mohamed Salah scored the goal............ Egypt to World Cup finals.
ⓐ send ⓑ sent ⓒ sending ⓓ is sent

5 Sama .... homework was corrected, was good.
ⓐ where ⓑ whose ⓒ when ⓓ which

6 Egypt is the country............ I enjoy living in.
ⓐ which ⓑ what ⓒ whom ⓓ where

7 Most novels............ by Yousef Idrees, are still read today.
ⓐ were written ⓑ written ⓒ are written ⓓ are writing

8 Can you kindly hand me the file .... cover is white.
ⓐ who's ⓑ whose ⓒ which ⓓ that

9 The chair............ I was sitting broke down.
ⓐ whose ⓑ for which ⓒ on which ⓓ which

10 This is the town in............ I spent my childhood.
ⓐ which ⓑ where ⓒ when ⓓ why

11 I read an article .... the writer expresses his opinion of globalization.
ⓐ that ⓑ which ⓒ at which ⓓ in which

12 I read an article .... expresses the writer's opinion of globalization.
ⓐ where ⓑ which ⓒ at which ⓓ in which

13 The company, ... my father worked for, exported goods to Europe.
ⓐ which ⓑ whose ⓒ where ⓓ that

14 Ali is the best one .... won a prize.
ⓐ whose ⓑ whom ⓒ who ⓓ that

15 It is a club .... many important people belong.
ⓐ into which ⓑ for which ⓒ when ⓓ to which

Fill in gap:

16 This is the smallest car .... has ever been made.
17 She told me she'd been married before, ... I didn't realize.
18 My daughter, ... ambition is to emigrate to Australia, has finally got her visa.
19 I know an Italian restaurant .... serves excellent home-made pasta.
20 I know an Italian restaurant .... you can always get a table.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 The young man who awarded the prize is my brother. [..............................]
22 Mr Ali, that works with us, traveled to Alex. [..............................]
23 They got divorced a few months later who surprised nobody. [..............................]
24 I felt great pity for the woman who baby died. [..............................]
25 I told him all who I know about the solar system. [..............................]

Reported statements الجملة الخبرية في الخبر مباشر

فاعل (اسم/ضمير)	+ فعل القول	+ مفعول (اسم / ضمير)	+ الرابـــــط	+ باقي الجملة
	said – told - promised complain - explained- warn- admit- threaten	يوجد أفعال تحتاج إلى مفعول وأخرى لا تحتاج	تستخدم that كرابط ويمكن حذفها	صيغة جملة وماضي (ماعدا حالات عدم تغير الزمن)

❶ تحويل فعل القول كما يلي:

direct	indirect
say	say
says	says
said	said - اي فعل لازم

direct	indirect
say to	tell
says to	tells
said to	told

❷ تحذف inverted commas (علامات التنصيص) ويمكن استخدام that أو تحذف.

❸ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب كما يلي:

direct	indirect
I	he - she
we	they
our	their

direct		indirect
you	ضمير فاعل	he - she - they
you	ضمير مفعول	him - her - them - us
your - my	ملكية	his - her _ their - my

❹ تتغير الأزمنة كما يلي:

direct	indirect	لاحـــــــــظ
play / plays	played	يتحول المضارع البسيط إلى الماضي بسيط
played	had played	يتحول الماضي البسيط إلى الماضي التام
(am / is / are) playing	(was / were) playing	يتحول المضارع المستمر إلى الماضي المستمر
(have / has) played	had played	يتحول المضارع التام إلى الماضي التام
(has / have) been playing	had been playing	يتحول المضارع التام المستمر إلى الماضي التام المستمر
(was / were) playing	had been playing	يتحول الماضي المستمر الى الماضي التام المستمر
will play	would play	الأفعال الناقصة تحول إلى الماضي
shall play	should / would play	
may play	might play	
can play	could play	
must play	had to play	

❺ تتغير أظرف المكان والزمان كما يلي:

direct	indirect	direct	indirect	direct	indirect
now	then	tomorrow	the next day the following day the day after	last week	the week before the previous week the last week
this	that	yesterday	the day before the previous day the last day	next week	the next week the following week the week after
these	those	ago	before	tonight	that night
here	there	yet	by then	today	that day

لاحظ

✓ Toka said to Jana, "I will meet you tomorrow."
Toka told Jana that she would meet her the following day.

✓ Ali said to me, "I am preparing a party now."
Ali told me he was preparing a party then.

✓ Toka said, "I have my breakfast at 7 o' clock."
Toka said she had her breakfast at 7 o' clock.

لا تتغير الأزمنة في الحالات التالية

❶ لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كان فعل القول في المضارع أو المستقبل(و لا نغير الكلمات الدالة علي الأزمنة):

✓ Toka says, "I don't believe this story."
Toka says she doesn't believe this story.

❷ لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة:

✓ Jana said, "If water freezes, it changes into ice."
Jana said that if water freezes, it changes into ice.

❸ لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة قيلت منذ فترة وجيزة ويدل على ذلك كلمات تأتي بعد فعل القول مثل:

(now / just now / a moment ago / a minute ago / a short time ago / recently)

✓ Mr Ahmed said just now, "I have already done my book."
Mr Ahmed said just now he has already done his book.

❹ لا تتغير الأزمنة مع بعض التعبيرات مثل:

(would like / would rather / had better / should / would / could / might)

✓ Ahmed said, "I'd rather work." Ahmed said that he'd rather work.

❺ في حالة وجود if يتغير الزمن في الحالة الأولى فقط (لا يتغير في الحالة الثانية والثالثة):

✓ He said, "If you don't get into hospital, you won't get well."
He said if I didn't get into hospital, I wouldn't get well.

❻ في حالة وجود wish / If only للتعبير عن التمني او الندم:

✓ He said," I wish I traveled abroad." He said that he wished he traveled abroad.

❼ في حالة وجود used to بمعني اعتاد علي:

✓ Seif said to Jana "I used to cry much when I was young."
He told Jana that he used to cry much when he was young.

Reported Questions السؤال في الغير مباشر

خد بالك

يوجد نوعان من السؤال (السؤال بفعل مساعد والسؤال باستخدام أداة استفهام) وللتحويل إلى غير مباشر كما يلي:

❶ تحويل فعل القول كما يلي:

direct	indirect
said to	asked
said	wanted to know / wondered / inquired / asked

❷ تحذف inverted commas (علامات التنصيص)

ونستخدم if أو whether في السؤال بالفعل المساعد ونستخدم نفس أداة الاستفهام في السؤال بأداة استفهام.

❸ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب كما في الجملة الخبرية.

❹ تتغير الأزمنة كما في الجملة الخبرية.

❺ يتم تحويل صيغة السؤال إلي صيغة جملة خبرية. (لا يوجد صيغة سؤال في الغير مباشر)

❻ تحول الظروف الزمنية والمكانية كما في الجملة الخبرية:

✓ "Where do you live?" asked Huda.
Huda asked me where I lived.

✓ "Why are you laughing?" Sami asked her
Sami asked her why she was laughing.

✓ "Who were you talking to yesterday?" asked Heba.
Heba asked who we had been talking to the day before.

✓ "When will you be back?" asked their father.
Their father asked them when they would be back.

Important Notes

❶ إذا كانت إجابة السؤال Yes / No تستخدم if / whether ونستخدم whether فقط اذا وجدت or.

✓ She said to me, "Do you speak English?"
She asked me if I spoke English.

✓ He said, "Have you ever eaten pizza or not?"
He wondered whether I had ever eaten pizza or not.

❷ إذا بدأ السؤال بأداة استفهام مثل How / Where / When تستخدم نفس الأداة كاداه ربط:

✓ He said, "Why are you crying?" - He asked why I was crying.

❸ حذف الكلمات (do / does / did) عند تحويل السؤال إلى غير مباشر في (do / does) يحول الفعل إلى الماضي البسيط و(did) يتحول الفعل إلى الماضي التام.

✓ Jana said to Toka, "How did you go to the work?"
Jana asked Toka how she had gone to the work.

✓ Jana said to Toka, "When does she watch TV?"
Jana asked Toka when she watched TV.

❹ لا تتغير الأزمنة في بعض التحويلات كما في الجملة الخبرية:

✓ Toka asks Adam, "What will you do?" - Toka asks Adam what he will do.

✓ Mr Ahmed asked just now, "Where is the club?"
Mr Ahmed asked just now where the club is.

الجملة الأمرية والاقتراح والنصيحة في الغير مباشر Reported imperatives, suggestions and advice

الجملة الأمرية

هي جملة التي تبدأ بفعل في المصدر في الإثبات مثل "Open this door."

أو بـ don't في حالة النفي مثل "Don't waste your time."

وللتحويل إلى كلام غير مباشر كما يلي:

❶ تحويل فعل القول كما يلي:

direct	indirect
said to	complained - warned - ordered - asked - told - advised

❷ تحذف inverted commas (علامات التنصيص) ونستخدم:

في الأمر المثبت نستخدم (المصدر + to)

✓ Ali said to his son "study hard."

✓ Ali advised (told - asked) his son to study hard.

في الأمر المنفى نستخدم (المصدر + not to)

✓ Seif said to Jana "Don't make noise."

✓ Seif advised (told) Jana not to make noise.

❸ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب كما في الجملة الخبرية:

❹ تتغير الأزمنة كما في الجملة الخبرية.

❺ تتغير أظرف المكان والزمان كما في الجملة الخبرية.

استخدام الأفعال في الغير مباشر

لاحظ

في حالة التمني **(wish)**	**wish .... to + inf. Or noun** ✓ He said to me, "Have a nice holiday." ➲ She **wished** me a nice holiday.
في حالة الاتهام **(accuse)**	**accuse .... of + V + ing** ✓ Nada said to Aya, "You stole my wallet." ➲ Nada **accused** Aya **of** stealing her wallet.
في حالة الاقتراح **(suggest)** في حالة التوصية **(recommend)**	**suggest / recommend + v +ing** **suggest / recommend that + فاعل + should + inf. (فاعل + inf.)** ✓ He said, "Let's sing" = He **suggested** singing. ➲ He **suggested** that they should sing.
في حالة الوعد **(promise)**	**promise to + inf. / promised that + جملة** ✓ His father said, "If you get high marks, I'll buy you a bike." ➲ His father **promised to** buy him a bike if he got high marks.
في حالة النصيحة **(advise)**	**advise someone to / not to + inf.** ✓ He said to me, "You'd better sleep early." ➲ He **advised** me **to** sleep early. إذا بدأت الجملة داخل الأقواس بـ If الافتراضية (للنصيحة) تحول كالآتي : ✓ He said, "If I were you, I would study hard." ➲ He **advised** me **to** study hard.
في حالة الاعتراف **(admit)**	**admit + v + ing / admit that جملة** ✓ She said, "I did this crime." ➲ She **admitted** doing that crime.
في حالة الموافقة **(agree)**	**agree to + inf. / agree that + جملة** ✓ He said to me, "yes, I will go with you." ➲ He **agreed** to go with me.
في حالة الرفض **(refuse)**	**refuse to + inf. / refuse that + جملة** ✓ She said to me, "No, I won't go with you." ➲ She **refused** to go with me.
في حالة الإنكار **(deny)**	**deny + v +ing / deny that جملة** ✓ The thief said, "I didn't rob the house." ➲ The thief **denied** robbing the house. ➲ The thief **denied** that he had robbed the house.
في حالة الاعتذار **(apologise)**	**apologize for + V + ing** ✓ He said, "I'm sorry I didn't attend your wedding party." ➲ He **apologised** for not attending my wedding party.

في حالة العرض **(offer)**	**offer to + inf. / offer that + جملة** ✓ He said, "Shall I help you to cross the road?" ➲ He **offered** to help me cross the road.
في حالة الطلب **(request)**	**ask .... to + inf.** ✓ She said, "Could you lend me your dictionary, please?" ➲ She **asked** me to lend her my dictionary.
في حالة الدعوة **(invitation)**	**invite .... to + inf.** ✓ He said, "Would you like to come to my birthday party?" ➲ He **invited** me to his birthday party.
في حالة اللوم **(blame)**	**blame .... for + V + ing** ✓ He said, "Why didn't you study hard?" ➲ He **blamed** me for not studying hard.
في حالة القرار **(decide)**	**decide to + inf.** ✓ He said, "I've made up my mind to give up smoking" ➲ He **decided to** give up smoking.
في حالة التحذير **(warn)**	**warn someone not to + inf.** **warn someone against + V + ing** ✓ He said to me, "Don't cross the road." ➲He **warned** me **not to** cross the road. ➲He **warned** me **against** crossing the road.
في حالة الاصرار **(insist)**	**insist on + V + ing** ✓ He said, "I will leave now." ➲ He **insisted on leaving** then.

لاحظ تحويلات must

تحول must إلى **had to** في الماضي.

✓ He said, "I must study hard."
➲ **He said that he had to study hard.**

تحول must إلى **would have to** في المستقبل.

✓ He said, "I must come tomorrow."
➲ **He said that he would have to come tomorrow.**

لا تتحول **must** إذا كانت تدل على وجوب دائم.

✓ She said,"We must obey our parents."
➲ **She said that they must obey their parents.**

تتحول **must** إذا كانت تدل على استنتاج الي **must have + P.P**

✓ He said to me, "Ali must be ill."
➲ **He told me that Ali must have been ill.**

هذا الجزء يساعدك على الحل

❶ لاحظ تحول بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان وما يأتي معهم كما يلي:

Direct	Reported	عند وجود تلك الكلمات لابد أن تحتوي الجملة على
now	then	was, were + inf. + ing
at this moment	at that moment	
ago	before	had + P.P
yesterday	the day before / the last day / the previous day	
last week "month - year"	the week before / the last week / the previous week	
tomorrow	the day after / the next day / the following day	would + inf. مصدر was / were + going to +inf. مصدر was / were + inf. +ing
next week "month - year"	the week after / the next week / the following week	
tonight	that night	had + P.P
today	that day	
yet	by then	
for / since	for / since	

- ✓ Toka **said that** she **was preparing** for her birthday party **then**.
- ✓ Jana **told** me **that** she **had been** to Luxor **the week before**.
- ✓ Ahmed **said** that he **would buy that** nice jacket **the following week**.

❷ لاحظ أن الكلام الغير مباشر دائماً يكون في صيغة الجملة وزمن الماضي (ماعدا حالات عدم تغير الزمن):

Jana told Toka that .... bought a new dress.

ⓐ has she ⓑ she has ⓒ had she ⓓ she had

خطأ (صيغة سؤال ومضارع) خطأ (مضارع) خطأ (صيغة سؤال) صحيحة (ماضي وجملة)

Jana asked Toka where .... bought this dress.

ⓐ has she ⓑ she has ⓒ had she ⓓ she had

خطأ (صيغة سؤال ومضارع) خطأ (مضارع) خطأ (صيغة سؤال) صحيحة (ماضي وجملة)

❸ إذا جاءت أداة الاستفهام بعد صيغ الطلب تعامل كجملة وليست سؤال مثل:

- ✓ Can you tell me **where the club is**?
- ✓ Do you know **where Toka went**?

❹ بعض افعال القول لا يأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير (مخاطب) مثل:

said / admitted / reported / answered / explained / complained / replied
wanted to know / wondered / inquired

- ✓ Hani **wanted to know** if he could go.
- ✓ Mona **inquired** where the book was.
- ✓ Hani **said** that he came late.

لاحظ أن بعض أفعال القول لابد أن يأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير (مخاطب) مثل:

told / persuaded / convinced / warned / reminded

- ✓ Seif **told** Aya that she was lazy.

Wise Saying

Sometimes you win, sometimes you learn.

أحياناً تربح .. وأحياناً تتعلم

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Ahmed promised that he .... late once more.
ⓐ wouldn't be ⓑ mustn't be ⓒ can't be ⓓ won't be

2 Marwan said that he............ feed the birds.
ⓐ has to ⓑ have to ⓒ must ⓓ had to

3 Salah said that his favourite subject............ history.
ⓐ was ⓑ were ⓒ has been ⓓ will be

4 Omnia .... that she had a headache.
ⓐ complained ⓑ told ⓒ asked ⓓ warned

5 Mary says that she............ her room every day.
ⓐ clean ⓑ is cleaning ⓒ cleaned ⓓ cleans

6 Ahmed .... to drive me into the city centre.
ⓐ said ⓑ threatened ⓒ ordered ⓓ agreed

7 Hani promised............ me his mobile.
ⓐ to lend ⓑ to lending ⓒ lending ⓓ lend

8 A back injury............ her to withdraw from the race.
ⓐ forced ⓑ suggested ⓒ expected ⓓ invited

9 The teacher asked why so many students were absent ....
ⓐ that day ⓑ the following day ⓒ this day ⓓ the day before

10 She asked me whether .... there before.
ⓐ I went ⓑ I had been ⓒ had I been ⓓ I go

11 Samy's mother asked him where ....
ⓐ he had been ⓑ had he been ⓒ he has been ⓓ has he been

12 I suggested that he............ wait for us till we return.
ⓐ will ⓑ can ⓒ should ⓓ shall

13 She told the police that her purse had been robbed the............ .
ⓐ following day ⓑ day previous ⓒ day before ⓓ next day

14 Toka............ going shopping at the new Fairfax centre.
ⓐ demanded ⓑ warned ⓒ promised ⓓ suggested

15 Aya denied............ the car window.
ⓐ breaking ⓑ break ⓒ to breaking ⓓ to break

Fill in gap:

16 Ali said that he .... play football that evening.

17 Aya .... me what I would buy for her as a present.

18 I asked him what he............ been doing the day before.

19 "Let's go to the beach", he said. He suggested .... to the beach.

20 Nada said .... she ate too many sweets.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 Ahmed told me that he has been to Alexandria the week before. [..............................]

22 Ali asked Yasser what was he doing. [..............................]

23 Ali wanted to know if I was ready for the interview or not. [..............................]

24 He asked where his mother was. "Where was my mother?" he asked. [..............................]

25 Rami wanted to know where Mona has been. [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The farmers said that they............ modern methods then.
ⓐ used ⓑ were using ⓒ was using ⓓ had used

2 The teacher.......... the pupils to do the homework.
ⓐ threatened ⓑ offered ⓒ promised ⓓ reminded

3 Ahmed tells me that he .... to stop smoking.
ⓐ want ⓑ had wanted ⓒ wanted ⓓ wants

4 He said just now that he .... a new car next month as planned.
ⓐ would buy ⓑ will buy ⓒ is going to buy ⓓ buys

5 The mechanic told the driver that he............ his car the previous week.
ⓐ repairs ⓑ has repaired ⓒ had repaired ⓓ was repairing

6 Samy's mother told him that .... rude.
ⓐ he had been ⓑ had he been ⓒ he had had ⓓ has he been

7 He said "I'm sorry for not coming earlier". He .... to me for not coming early.
ⓐ confessed ⓑ apologised ⓒ admitted ⓓ promised

8 Ahmed .... Ali had never been to Aswan.
ⓐ said ⓑ told ⓒ asked ⓓ ordered

9 The famous actor............ he could do the same performance the next day.
ⓐ told ⓑ inquired ⓒ said ⓓ wondered

10 The social studies teacher told us that Asia ....the largest continent in the world.
ⓐ was ⓑ is ⓒ has been ⓓ will be

11 The teacher .... to know why the students were all late.
ⓐ demanded ⓑ ignored ⓒ discouraged ⓓ silenced

12 The teacher wanted to know whether .... a perfect essay.
ⓐ I could write ⓑ could I write ⓒ could write ⓓ can you write

13 The teacher............ the students to work in pairs.
ⓐ inquired ⓑ encouraged ⓒ warned ⓓ said

14 Ali has just told me that he .... to a friend's wedding tonight.
ⓐ was going ⓑ is going ⓒ had gone ⓓ would go

15 He promised............ me as soon as he reached the airport.
ⓐ phoning ⓑ phone ⓒ to phoning ⓓ to phone

Fill in gap:

16 Nader suggested............ a film on TV tonight.

17 She .... that she was living with her family.

18 She asked .... I liked the book or not.

19 The teacher .... us that today's lesson is about morals.

20 "I've made a mistake.", he said. he admitted he .... a mistake.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 Huda told me that she had travelled to Paris the next week. [..............................]

22 Aya inquired who was the person I had been talking to. [..............................]

23 He asked me where had I been. [..............................]

24 The expert told that pesticides could be poisonous. [..............................]

25 The teacher said that the earth orbited the sun. [..............................]

3 Advanced Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "I know I can do it.", he said. He assured that he .... it.
ⓐ could do ⓑ can do ⓒ would do ⓓ did
2. He advised us to hurry. "You .... hurry boys.", he said.
ⓐ had better ⓑ will better ⓒ better ⓓ have better
3. She admitted having stolen the purse." I .... the purse.", she said.
ⓐ steal ⓑ have stolen ⓒ would steal ⓓ stolen
4. He told her to bring it the next day. "Bring it ....", he said to her.
ⓐ the next day ⓑ another day ⓒ tomorrow ⓓ the following day
5. He ordered them to stand to attention. "Stand to attention.", he........... .
ⓐ orders them ⓑ ordered they ⓒ they ordered ⓓ ordered them
6. Jana .... that she had taken my wallet.
ⓐ denied ⓑ promised ⓒ begged ⓓ offered
7. I knew that a new secondary school .... in our village recently.
ⓐ has built ⓑ has been built ⓒ had been built ⓓ had built
8. He said that he .... be able to sleep until he had finished the story.
ⓐ won't ⓑ didn't ⓒ hasn't ⓓ wouldn't
9. He said he............ his grandmother in hospital the week before.
ⓐ has visited ⓑ visited ⓒ had visited ⓓ was visiting
10. Toka told Jana that she....... look for a mechanic when her car broke down.
ⓐ must ⓑ has to ⓒ had to ⓓ have to
11. Can you tell me .... now?
ⓐ what time is it ⓑ what time it is ⓒ what time is ⓓ what time was it
12. Do you know how much............ to go to the top of the Cairo Tower?
ⓐ it costs ⓑ does it cost ⓒ the cost will ⓓ will it cost
13. I asked Ahmed .... broke the window.
ⓐ if ⓑ that ⓒ why ⓓ who
14. She .... me if I bought a new car.
ⓐ wondered ⓑ wandered ⓒ asked ⓓ inquired
15. He .... I was late and if I had missed the bus.
ⓐ asked if ⓑ wondered why ⓒ said that ⓓ told me

Fill in gap:

16. Aya .... Mona that London is the biggest city in England.
17. She asked me .... I could tell her how old I was.
18. Tamer said that he was going to see the new film about space the .... week.
19. The scientist said atoms .... the smallest elements.
20. Our teacher says that he........... ready to help all the pupils.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21. They wanted to know if did I play music. [..................................]
22. Samir inquired me why I had chosen that T-shirt. [..................................]
23. Mother asked me tidying my room. [..................................]
24. Ali said, "If I were you, I'd I read this book." Ali ordered me to read that book. [..............]
25. Aisha's parents asked her unless she had finished her homework. [..................................]

4 Advanced Exercises

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My friend suggested .... for the next bus.
ⓐ to waiting ⓑ not waiting ⓒ we waited ⓓ don't waiting

2 My brother said, "Why.......... travel by train?" - Surely, I will act upon his suggestion.
ⓐ don't you ⓑ you don't ⓒ didn't you ⓓ you didn't

3 The policeman .... the people not to drive so fast.
ⓐ made ⓑ wondered ⓒ instructed ⓓ said

4 "Don't park here?" - The policeman said we............ park there.
ⓐ should ⓑ mustn't ⓒ shouldn't ⓓ must

5 My friend wanted me .... for the same job as it's not rewarding.
ⓐ to apply ⓑ not to apply ⓒ don't apply ⓓ apply

6 I suggested that Ali .... to the club with us.
ⓐ went ⓑ to go ⓒ go ⓓ going

7 I asked the tourist .... he comes from.
ⓐ whether ⓑ when ⓒ where ⓓ which

8 Ahmed said that he would buy .... nice jacket the following week.
ⓐ these ⓑ those ⓒ that ⓓ this

9 The criminal .... that he killed his neighbour deliberately.
ⓐ promised ⓑ suggested ⓒ threatened ⓓ admitted

10 I............ that Ahmed go by his car.
ⓐ promised ⓑ said ⓒ told ⓓ suggested

11 I asked just now what............ .
ⓐ was the time ⓑ the time is ⓒ is the time ⓓ the time was

12 She told me that I .... due care to my work. I actually appreciate her advice.
ⓐ needn't have given ⓑ could have given
ⓒ should have given ⓓ should give

13 They suggested they come with me. "............ with you.", they said.
ⓐ We'd go ⓑ Come ⓒ We'll go ⓓ Let's go

14 He said he'd be back early. "I .... back early.", he said.
ⓐ 'd come ⓑ 'll be ⓒ am to be ⓓ would be

15 She wanted to know where he was. "Where ....?", she demanded.
ⓐ was he ⓑ he was ⓒ would he be ⓓ is he

Fill in gap:

16 My mother warned me .... touch the plate because it was very hot.
17 "I never do that.",he said. He said that he never .... that.
18 He told us that he........... come the following day.
19 My father .... me if I had done my best, he'd reward me.
20 She........... me how hard her life was.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 Ahmed admitted he would visit us as soon as possible. [..............................]
22 He asked me what I had a driving licence. [..............................]
23 We asked our teacher if our exam papers had checked. [..............................]
24 Soha admitted to tell a lie when she was first asked. [..............................]
25 The officer begged the soldiers to fire at the terrorist. [..............................]

If Conditionals حالات If

If الحالة الصفرية

Zero conditional: Present simple زمن المضارع البسيط (v : v + s) , Present simple زمن المضارع البسيط (v : v + s)

تستخدم للتعبير عن حقائق علمية عامة وللتعبير عن عادات ثابتة لا تتغير ولا ترتبط بتوقيت معين:

- ✓ If you **heat** ice, it **melts**.
- ✓ If we **mix** white and red, we **get** pink.

للبد أن تكون الحقيقة عامه وليست خاصة وإذا كانت الحقيقة خاصة تستخدم الحالة الأولى كما يلي:

❶ استخدام صفة إشارة (this / that / these / those) قبل الفاعل أو المفعول.

❷ استخدام صفة ملكية (My / his / her / its / your / our / their / ....'s...).

❸ ارتباط حدوث الفعل بمكان محدد أو بتوقيت محدد أو ما يدل علي ذلك.

لاحظ الفرق

- ✓ If I use the computer for so long, I **always get** tired.
- ✓ If I use the computer for so long today, I **will get** tired.

المثال الأول عادة عامة طوال حياتي لكن المثال الثاني وصف لموقف محدد.

- ✓ If we boil water, it **steams**. (عامة)
- ✓ If we boil **thin** water, it **will steam**. (موقف خاص)
- ✓ If we boil water in **this** pot, it **will steam**. (خاص)

If الحالة الأولى

First conditional: Present simple زمن المضارع البسيط (v: v + s) , will + inf. / أمر أو نهي can/may/should + inf.

تستخدم للتعبير عن إمكانية حقيقية لحدوث شيء في المستقبل تتوفر شروط حدوثه.

- ✓ If you **study** hard, you **will succeed**.
- ✓ If we **go** by bus, it **will be** cheaper.

يمكننا استخدام الأمر أو النهي أو الطلب في جملة جواب الشرط

- ✓ If Jana **calls**, **tell** her I am here.

يمكننا استخدام (**may**) في جملة جواب الشرط للتعبير عن اللحتمال أو (**can**) للتعبير عن المقدرة

- ✓ If Jana **studies** well, she **can get** a high mark.
- ✓ If Seif **looks** at me carefully, he **may recognise** me.

يمكننا استخدام (**should**) في جملة جواب الشرط للتعبير عن النصيحة أو (**have to**) للتعبير عن الإلزام

- ✓ If you **ask** me, you **should** see a doctor.
- ✓ If Seif **comes** late, he **has to** apologise.

If الحالـــــة الثانـــــية

Second conditional

Past simple / **(شاذ أو v + ed) ماضي البسيط** , **would + inf.** / **could / might + inf.**

تعبر الحالة الثانية عن موقف غير محتمل أو شيء تخيلي في المضارع.

- ✓ What would you do if you were bitten by a snake?
- ✓ Who would you ask if you needed help?
- ✓ If I knew his number, I would phone him.
- ✓ If I was / were a bird, I could fly.
- ✓ If I studied hard, I would pass .
- ✓ If I was / were rich, I would build a palace.
- ✓ If we went by bus, it would be cheaper.
- ✓ What would you do if you won a lot of money?
- ✓ If there was (or were) an election tomorrow, who would you vote for?
- ✓ If it stopped raining, we could go out. (= we would be able to go out)

تستخدم الحالة الثانية لطلب أو أعطاء نصيحة.

- ✓ If I were you, I wouldn't waste my time.
- ✓ If you were in my position, what would you do?

If الحالـــــة الثالثـــــة

Third conditional

Past perfect / **ماضي التام (had + P.P)** , **would have + P.P.** / **could / might have + P.P.**

للتعبير عن استحالة الحدوث وتستخدم للانتقاد أو الندم:

- ✓ If you had gone to the sports club, you would / could / might have seen Ali.
- ✓ If Toka had left earlier, she wouldn't have missed the train.
- ✓ If I'd known you were in hospital, I would have gone to see you.
- ✓ I didn't go out last night. I would have gone out if I hadn't been so tired.
- ✓ If he had been looking where he was going, he wouldn't have walked into the wall.
- ✓ The view was wonderful. If I'd had a camera with me, I would have taken pictures.

Compare

- ✓ I'm not hungry. If I was hungry, I would eat something. (now)
- ✓ I wasn't hungry. If I had been hungry, I would have eaten something. (past)

Compare **would have, could have and might have:**

- ✓ If the weather hadn't been so bad, we would (could) have gone out.
  (= we would have been able to go out)
- ✓ If the weather hadn't been so bad, we might have gone out.
  (= perhaps we would have gone out)

خـد بـــالك

❶ يتم حل جمل الاختياري عن طريق النظر إلى الجملة الكاملة سواء كانت جملة فعل الشرط أو جملة جواب الشرط ثم تحديد الحالة من الجملة الكامل كما يلي:

✓ If she............ up early, she **would catch** the train.

الجملة الكاملة هنا جملة جواب الشرط وبها would + inf. هي تعبر عن الحالة الثانية أي اللاختياري الصحيح سوف يكون ماضي بسيط.

✓ If she **had read** quickly, she .... the competition.

الجملة الكاملة هنا جملة فعل الشرط وبها had + P.P. هي الحالة الثالثة أي اللاختياري الصحيح سوف يكون would have + P.P.

❷ لاحظ كلمة had فقط تعبر عن الحالة الثانية أما had + P.P. تعبر عن الحالة الثالثة.

❸ لاحظ كلمة would have فقط تعبر عن الحالة الثانية أما would have + P.P. تعبر عن الحالة الثالثة.

We do not normally use would in the if-part of the sentence:

✓ I'd be scared **if** somebody **pointed** a gun at me. (NOT if somebody would point)

✓ **If** we **went** by bus, it would be cheaper. (NOT if we would go)

But you can use if ... would when you ask somebody to do something:

✓ I **would** be grateful **if** you **would let** me know your decision as soon as possible.

حـــالات حـــذف If

حذف if الحالة اللولي نستخدم بدلا من (If) (Should+ ......+ inf.) كالتالي:

✓ If Toka **studies hard**, she will succeed.
= **Should** Toka **study** hard, she will succeed.

حذف if الحالة الثانية نستخدم بدلا من (If)

❶ واذا كانت (were) فعل أساسي في الجملة تأتي مكان (if) وتكون بمعني لو كنت:

✓ If I **were** you, I'd help **poor** people. = **were** I you, I'd help poor people.

❷ واذا كانت (had) فعل أساسي في الجملة تأتي مكان (if) وتكون بمعني لو امتلك :

✓ If I **had** much **money**, I'd buy a car. = **Had** I much money, I'd buy a car.

❸ واذا وجد فعل أساسي غير (were) تأتي Should + subject.+ inf. مكان (if):

✓ If Toka **studied hard**, she'd succeed.
= **Should** Toka **study** hard, she'd succeed.

❹ واذا وجد فعل أساسي غير (were) تأتي were + subject + to + inf. مكان (if) :

✓ If Toka **studied hard**, she'd succeed.
= **were** Toka **to study** hard, she'd succeed.

حذف if الحالة الثالثة نستخدم بدلا من (If) (Had + subject + P.P) كالتالي:

✓ If Toka **had left** earlier, she wouldn't have missed the train.
= **Had** Toka **left** earlier, she **wouldn't have missed** the train.

If بدائـــــــــل

If = in case = providing (that) = provided (that) = as long as = on condition that = supposing (that) = imagine (that) إذا / لو

- ✓ You can borrow my pen **if / provided that / on condition that / as long as** you give it back.
- ✓ **In case** Toka left earlier, she wouldn't miss the train.
- ✓ **Supposing / Imagine (that)** you found a job in Cairo, what would you do?

in case

- ✓ I**'ll** leave my mobile phone switched on **in case** Jane **calls**.
- ✓ I**'ll** draw a map for you **in case** you **have** problems finding our house.
- ✓ I**'ll** remind them about the meeting **in case** they**'ve forgotten**.
- ✓ I**'ll** give you my phone number **in case** you **need** to contact me.
- ✓ You **should** insure your bike **in case** it **is stolen**.

If (there is) = In case of = With = By + noun / v + ing في حالة

- ✓ **In case of** emergency, call 122.
- ✓ Toka wouldn't miss the train **in case of / with / by leaving** earlier.

in case of ... = if there is....

- ✓ **In case of** fire, please leave the building as quickly as possible. (= if there is a fire)
- ✓ **In case of** emergency, call this number. (= if there is an emergency)

unless = except if = If ....not...(جملة) اذا لم ـ لو لم

unless = without / but for / If it weren't for + noun / Inf. ing اذا لم ـ لو لم

- ✓ **If they didn't have** a ticket, they wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- ✓ **Unless they had** a ticket, they wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- ✓ **Without having** a ticket, they wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- ✓ **If Toka didn't leave** earlier, she would miss the train.
- ✓ **Unless Toka left** earlier, she would miss the train.
- ✓ **Without / But for leaving earlier**, Toka would miss the train.

خد بـــالك

If it were not for + inf. + ing / n.. → subj. + Would + inf. ... الحالة الثانية

If it hadn't been for + inf. + ing / n.. → subj. + Would have + P.P الحالة الثالثة

If tricks

ممكن تحاول تفهم و تكتب سبب الاختيار

يا تركـــــــــــــاتك
يا حركـاااااااااااتك

8 (**Had** - Were) I money, I would buy a car.
9 (Had - **Were**) I a bird, I could fly.
10 (**Had** - Were) I wings, I could fly.
11 (**Should** - Were) he study hard, he would pass the exam.
12 (Should - **Were**) I to study hard, I get full marks.
13 (**Should** - Were) you meet Ali, tell him your good news.
14 (If - **Had**) I been stupid, I wouldn't have solved that problem.
15 (If - **Had**) I read the book, I would have explained it.
16 If the money I had, (had - had had - **had been**) enough, I would have bought a car.
17 If he read the book, (will - **would**) he understand it?

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If it rains tomorrow, we............at home.
ⓐ will stay ⓑ stayed ⓒ stay ⓓ might stay

2 As long as you............boil your food, it won't lose vitamins.
ⓐ don't ⓑ won't ⓒ hadn't ⓓ haven't

3 You .... earn more if you spoke French.
ⓐ will ⓑ would ⓒ must ⓓ should

4 I............it very much if they gave the job to Ali.
ⓐ don't like ⓑ didn't like ⓒ won't like ⓓ wouldn't like

5 .... I his address, I could visit her.
ⓐ Had ⓑ If ⓒ Should ⓓ Were

6 If the money I had, ... enough, I'd have bought a new house.
ⓐ had ⓑ had been ⓒ been ⓓ were

7 If he arrived early, ...catch the metro?
ⓐ he would ⓑ would he ⓒ he will ⓓ will he

8 .... his assistance, I might have lost my job
ⓐ Without ⓑ If ⓒ Unless ⓓ Should

9 .... that you lived by the sea, what would you do every day?
ⓐ Condition ⓑ As long ⓒ Imagine ⓓ Supposed

10 Only call us............ an emergency.
ⓐ in case ⓑ in case of ⓒ if ⓓ as long as

11 .... she arrive early, I would help her.
ⓐ If ⓑ should ⓒ were ⓓ Unless

12 If I could, I .... to Madrid.
ⓐ would to go ⓑ would go ⓒ will go ⓓ must

13 What .... happen if you didn't go to the office?
ⓐ will ⓑ must ⓒ may ⓓ would

14 .... you go to the cinema if you had money?
ⓐ Will ⓑ Shall ⓒ Would ⓓ Should

15 My mother .... very angry if I lost the ring.
ⓐ would be ⓑ should be ⓒ would to be ⓓ won't be

Fill in gap:

16 What .... happened if he had refused to come to the party?
17 Would you help me if I .... in trouble?
18 What .... you do If you got lost in a big city?
19 If you ride the bus to Dahab, it .... take seven hours to get there.
20 If you study all night, you .... be exhausted at the time of the test.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 I will tell you all about it if you had the time. [..............................]
22 I would have closed the window if it'd had cold. [..............................]
23 I wouldn't have met Hassan if I stayed at home. [..............................]
24 If I were with them, I can stop the fight. [..............................]
25 If the weather was fine tomorrow, we'll go camping. [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If you have enough time, I .... rather have lunch together.
ⓐ would ⓑ will ⓒ can ⓓ would have

2 She wouldn't mind if I .... , would she?
ⓐ hadn't gone ⓑ didn't go ⓒ wouldn't go ⓓ don't go

3 If Toka ....us to the wedding, we should buy her a present.
ⓐ will invite ⓑ invites ⓒ invited ⓓ would invite

4 If autumn starts, trees.......their leaves.
ⓐ losing ⓑ will lose ⓒ lose ⓓ would lose

5 If Egypt ....a lot of rain, it might have a lot more trees.
ⓐ had ⓑ had had ⓒ will have ⓓ was having

6 If you want to come first, it...........necessary to exert more efforts.
ⓐ is ⓑ was ⓒ would ⓓ will

7 .... he played well, he would have won.
ⓐ If ⓑ Should ⓒ Had ⓓ Were

8 If he .... thirsty, he would have drunk some water.
ⓐ had had ⓑ had been ⓒ were ⓓ had

9 If the books hadn't been so expensive, I .... some.
ⓐ would buy ⓑ would have bought ⓒ bought ⓓ had bought

10 ....I your teacher, I would force you try harder.
ⓐ Were ⓑ If ⓒ Had ⓓ Should

11 You.......better if you take this medicine.
ⓐ felt ⓑ will feel ⓒ would have felt ⓓ would feel

12 Iron .... if you leave it in the open air.
ⓐ rust ⓑ will rust ⓒ rusts ⓓ would rust

13 .... they run out of tickets, we will have to go to another cinema.
ⓐ Were ⓑ Should ⓒ Had ⓓ Will

14 .... he to help us, we would be saved.
ⓐ If ⓑ were ⓒ had ⓓ should

15 .... emergency, call this number.
ⓐ If ⓑ In case ⓒ In case of ⓓ But for

Fill in gap:

16 I would have that mobile if I .... enough money.
17 If metal is heated, it ....
18 If I was taller, I .... play basketball.
19 If you mix red and green paint, you .... brown paint.
20 If I........... mistaken, I will apologize to her.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 If ice is heated, it melt. [..............................]
22 If water freezes, it will turn into ice. [..............................]
23 Unless you were in China, what food would you eat? [..............................]
24 Am I a movie star, I could get any table in the fanciest restaurant. [..............................]
25 Were he a proper plan, he wouldn't waste his time. [..............................]

3 Advanced Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 What if your passport ....? - Surely, I'd inform the police.
ⓐ had stolen ⓑ had been stolen ⓒ stole ⓓ was stolen

2 .... well, he would have gone out for a walk.
ⓐ Were he ⓑ Were he to feel ⓒ Had he ⓓ Had he been

3 If you .... more careful, you would have minimized your mistakes.
ⓐ had been ⓑ were ⓒ had ⓓ had had

4 If the problem .... well, we would have reached a reasonable solution.
ⓐ discussed ⓑ was discussed ⓒ had discussed ⓓ had been discussed

5 Contact the ambulance if there .... an accident.
ⓐ was ⓑ is ⓒ were ⓓ will be

6 If I were not ill, I'd visit you; really I .... ill.
ⓐ weren't ⓑ were ⓒ am ⓓ am not

7 I .... go to the club, if I have time. I haven't decided yet.
ⓐ would ⓑ may ⓒ should ⓓ have to

8 Taste the soup and add salt if ....
ⓐ necessary ⓑ was necessary ⓒ 'll be necessary ⓓ is necessary

9 If she read the news, she .... shocked to read about the terrible accident.
ⓐ is ⓑ will be ⓒ would be ⓓ were

10 I'd have lent you the money you needed if I had had enough money at home. Unfortunately, the money I had .... enough.
ⓐ was ⓑ wasn't ⓒ had been ⓓ hadn't been

11 When I work a lot in the garden, I ....no energy at night.
ⓐ had ⓑ have ⓒ has ⓓ will have

12 If the novel he had,.......exciting, I would have read it.
ⓐ had had ⓑ had been ⓒ been ⓓ had

13 .... she been more careful she wouldn't have broken her leg.
ⓐ If ⓑ Were ⓒ Had ⓓ Should

14 .... water, all people would die.
ⓐ In case of ⓑ But for ⓒ If ⓓ Even if

15 I don't know what .... do if I failed my exam.
ⓐ I will ⓑ will I ⓒ would I ⓓ I would

Fill in gap:

16 .... that you win the lottery, what will you do?
17 She........... better leave now if she wants to catch the train.
18 .... I you, I wouldn't tell anyone about it.
19 You can't get a driving licence........... you are 18 or older.
20 .... I had spare time, I'd have read more books.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 Provided him, I wouldn't have been able to survive [..............................]
22 If I found my own company, I would achieve my goal. [..............................]
23 If he here right now, he would know the truth. [..............................]
24 unless our savings, we wouldn't have been able to make the payments. [..............................]
25 Had I been a millionaire, I would not have to worry about spending money. [..............................]

Linking words

- روابط الإضافة — Showing addition 1
- روابط السبب — Showing reason 2
- روابط النتيجة — Showing result 3
- روابط التناقض — Showing contrast 4
- روابط الغرض — Showing Purpose 5
- الروابط الزمنية — Showing Time 6

1 روابط الإضافة Linking Words showing addition

and = in addition (تربط بين جملتين) بالإضافة إلى

Examples

- ✓ We went shopping **and** watched a film.
- ✓ We went shopping. **In addition**, we watched a film.

as well as = in addition to = besides + (v +ing) بالإضافة إلى

لاحظ

إذا كان الفاعل واحد في الجملتين:

Examples

- ✓ **In addition to going** shopping, we watched a film.
- ✓ **Besides going** shopping, we watched a film.
- ✓ **As well as going** shopping, we watched a film.

إذا استخدم (**as well as = in addition to = besides**) في ربط جملتين يختلف فيهما الفاعل، فان الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأول:

- ✓ I am keen on music. My friend is keen on music.
- ✓ **I as well as** my brother **am** keen on music.
- ✓ My brother **as well as I is** keen on music.

مع هذه التعبيرات (**not only but also / or / either...or / neither...nor**) الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني

- ✓ **Either** the library **or** bookstores **are** open.
- ✓ **Either** the bookstores **or** the library **is** open.

not only .... but ....also .... ليس فقط .. ولكن أيضا

not only .... but .... as well أيضا ... ولكن .... ليس فقط

- ✓ We **not only** went shopping, **but also** we watched a film.
- ✓ We **not only** went shopping, **but** we watched a film **as well**.

إذا بدأت الجملة بـ **Not only** يستخدم بعدها صيغة سؤال

- ✓ **Not only did** we **go** shopping, but also we watched a film.

2 روابط السبب Linking Words showing reason

because
since
as
+ جملة

because of
owing to
due to
on account of
as a result of
thanks to
+ **adj. + n**
noun
v + ing

✓ We didn't enjoy the day **because** the weather was cold.
= We didn't enjoy the day **because of** the cold weather.

✓ She loses her tools **as** she is careless.
= **Due to** her carelessness, she loses her tools.

بدلاً من جملة **because** يمكن أن تبدأ الجملة بـ **Being** وبعدها الصفة ثم باقي الجملة

✓ He was absent **because he was ill.** = **Being ill**, he was absent.

The reason + جملة is / was that + جملة

✓ He was absent **because** he was ill.
= **The reason** he was absent **was that** he was ill.

3 روابط النتيجة Linking Words showing result

so لذلك / that's why / therefore لذلك / consequently بالتالي / thus / for this reason / as a result

لاحظ

✓ He was ill **so** he was absent.
✓ Jana didn't study well; **therefore** she didn't pass her exams.
✓ It was raining, **that's why** we didn't go out.
✓ He didn't arrive early; **as a result** he missed the bus.

4 روابط التناقض Linking Words showing contrast

although/ though / even though / even if / whereas بالرغم من

يأتوا في بداية الجملة أو بين الجملتين (بينهم تناقض)

✓ **Although** he is 70, he is energetic.
✓ **Even though** he is rich, he isn't happy.

ترتيب الجمل مع **although / though / even though** حيث أن الحدث الغير متوقع يأتي في الجملة الثانية .

أحيانا تستخدم **while** بمعنى **although**:

✓ **While** there was no evidence, they thought she committed this crime.

in spite of
despite
على الرغم من + n. / -ing / adj.+ n.

✓ **Despite** being 70, he is energetic.
✓ He isn't happy **in spite of** being rich.

In spite of the fact that
Despite the fact that
+ جملة

✓ **In spite of the fact that** He is 70. He is energetic.
✓ **Despite the fact that** he is rich, he isn't happy.

but / however / yet

✓ He is 70 **but / , however / , yet** he is energetic.
✓ He is rich **but / , however** he isn't happy.

However + adj. or adv. + فاعل + فعل

أنه إذا بدأت الجملة بـ **However** يأتي بعدها الصفة أو الحال ثم الفاعل و الفعل

✓ **However rich** he is, he isn't happy.
✓ **However hard** he studied, he got low marks.

adj. or adv. + as + فاعل + فعل

✓ Rich as he is, he isn't happy. ✓ Hard as he studied, he got low marks.

Whatever اسم + فاعل + فعل

✓ Whatever wealth he has, he isn't happy.
✓ Whatever hardships he faced, he could win.

5 روابط الغرض Linking Words showing Purpose

to / so as to / in order to +inf. لكي

✓ Toka goes to school to learn.
✓ Jana studies hard in order to join an engineering faculty.

in the hope of + v + ing لكي

✓ Toka goes to school in the hope of learning.
✓ Jana studies hard in the hope of joining an engineering faculty.

so that / in order to that / in the hope that لكي

مضارع
ماضي

so that - in order to that
- in the hope that

جملة تتضمن
will - may - can ...
جملة تتضمن
would - might - could ...

✓ He studies hard so that he can get full marks.
✓ He studied hard so that he could get full marks.

6 الروابط الزمنية Linking Words showing Time

لاحظ

سبق دراستهم في اللازمنة

While

ماضي مستمر
past continuous
ماضي بسيط
past simple
V + ing
عدم وجود فاعل

ماضي بسيط
past simple
ماضي مستمر
past continuous

✓ While Seif was studying, his father came. ✓ While studying, Seif 's father came.
✓ While Seif was studying, his mother was cooking.
✓ While I was on holiday, my house was robbed.

يُستخدم الماضي البسيط بعد while إذا كان الفعل to be.

✓ After Seif had studied, he slept. ✓ After studying, Seif slept.
✓ Having studied, Seif slept.

Before

ماضي بسيط
past simple
V + ing
عدم وجود فاعل

ماضي تام
past Perfect

✓ Before Seif slept, he had studied. ✓ Before sleeping, Seif had studied.

When + فاعل + فعل = On + V + ing.

✓ When he finished his study, he got a job as a teacher.
✓ On finishing his study, he got a job as a teacher.

During + اسم

✓ During the party, he received a lot of presents.

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I had to study around the clock .... pass my exams.
ⓐ because ⓑ in order to ⓒ so as ⓓ so that

2 .... the bad weather, the match was played.
ⓐ Although ⓑ Despite ⓒ However ⓓ Because

3 I've felt extremely tired today .... I went to bed early last night.
ⓐ because ⓑ however ⓒ although ⓓ so

4 .... studying hard, we got low marks.
ⓐ In spite of ⓑ However ⓒ Although ⓓ Whatever

5 On .... the policeman, the thief ran away.
ⓐ to see ⓑ seeing ⓒ he saw ⓓ saw

6 I repeated the lesson .... be sure that the students understood.
ⓐ so as to ⓑ as to ⓒ therefore ⓓ so that

7 .... graduating, he became a journalist.
ⓐ After ⓑ Although ⓒ Despite ⓓ In spite of

8 .... being very tired, I continued working.
ⓐ Even though ⓑ Therefore ⓒ As well ⓓ Despite

9 He not only missed his family but he .... missed his old friends.
ⓐ or ⓑ also ⓒ either ⓓ as well

10 .... he got a good job, he was not happy.
ⓐ Because ⓑ Although ⓒ But ⓓ Besides

11 .... he was at Oxford, he wrote a few poems.
ⓐ While ⓑ Although ⓒ Despite ⓓ In spite of

12 .... hearing the good news, everyone smiled and clapped.
ⓐ On ⓑ When ⓒ Because ⓓ So

13 .... the boys had played football, they had a shower.
ⓐ While ⓑ Because ⓒ After ⓓ Although

14 He was very unhappy at school .... he was regularly bullied.
ⓐ but ⓑ although ⓒ because ⓓ so

15 Toka felt much better .... talking with her advisor.
ⓐ after ⓑ because ⓒ but ⓓ if

Fill in gap:

16 .... really enjoying the book you lent me, I haven't finished it yet.
17 .... she was tired, she worked overtime.
18 He is from America .... now lives in England.
19 .... you say, I won't believe you.
20 Before .... to bed, Jana did his English homework.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 After finished his homework, Seif watched TV. [........................]
22 Although hard she studies, she doesn't get full marks. [........................]
23 Beside being clever, she is rich. [........................]
24 Despite we're good friends, we don't meet very often. [........................]
25 However I studied hard, my grades were not good. [........................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You won't pass the exam .... you work harder.
ⓐ if ⓑ although ⓒ without ⓓ unless

2 .... writing his own novels, he translated French and Italian literature into Arabic.
ⓐ As well as ⓑ Because of ⓒ In addition ⓓ In spite of

3 .... his old age, my uncle is very energetic.
ⓐ Although ⓑ Despite ⓒ Because of ⓓ In spite

4 .... being depressed, he's having trouble in school.
ⓐ In addition ⓑ Besides ⓒ Beside ⓓ Despite

5 He found it difficult to concentrate .... his worry about his grades.
ⓐ because ⓑ as ⓒ due to ⓓ since

6 .... going to bed last night, I read a chapter of a book.
ⓐ But ⓑ Although ⓒ Before ⓓ After

7 .... it rarely rains in Egypt, some tourists bring umbrellas with them.
ⓐ But ⓑ So ⓒ Although ⓓ However

8 .... they saw the road accident, the cars drove more slowly.
ⓐ So ⓑ Because ⓒ When ⓓ Although

9 After .... the reports, she saw a film.
ⓐ typed ⓑ had typed ⓒ types ⓓ typing

10 He was depressed, ... he went to see his advisor.
ⓐ as ⓑ but ⓒ because ⓓ so

11 I stayed in my room .... I was tired of speaking English all the time.
ⓐ so ⓑ because ⓒ but ⓓ due to

12 It is my mother's birthday soon, ... I want to buy her a present.
ⓐ so ⓑ but ⓒ because ⓓ however

13 Mohamed studies hard, ... he isn't getting good grades.
ⓐ but ⓑ because ⓒ despite ⓓ when

14 There's no airport in the city, ... there's one about fifty miles away.
ⓐ However ⓑ even though ⓒ however ⓓ besides

15 While Al Daifi .... on a holiday, he wrote two books.
ⓐ is ⓑ was being ⓒ was ⓓ had been

Fill in gap:

16 My father was ill, ... he continued working.

17 .... being very tired, he could go for a run.

18 She decided to order a salad now .... she had started a diet.

19 .... we ran fast, we missed the train.

20 Toka is both clever .... smart.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 The referee cancelled the match because the heavy rain. [........................]

22 Despite swimming is useful, I don't practise it. [........................]

23 While I was being young, I played football. [........................]

24 The hotel was fully booked, but we stayed at a guest house. [........................]

25 I went to school despite I was ill. [........................]

3 Advanced Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 .... poverty he has, he bought a large villa.
ⓐ Whatever ⓑ However ⓒ Although ⓓ Despite

2 Strong .... he is, he couldn't lift the case.
ⓐ although ⓑ as ⓒ despite ⓓ so

3 He woke up very late, ... he didn't catch the train.
ⓐ although ⓑ so ⓒ because ⓓ however

4 My father could have taken you to the airport .... you didn't ask him.
ⓐ so ⓑ as well as ⓒ and ⓓ but

5 .... I have not seen him before, I knew who he was.
ⓐ Because ⓑ Although ⓒ So ⓓ When

6 I've been feeling tired all day, ... I'm going to bed early tonight.
ⓐ because ⓑ but ⓒ so ⓓ though

7 Not only .... he miss his family but he is also experiencing culture shock.
ⓐ has ⓑ does ⓒ had ⓓ do

8 They told him he passed the test, ... he didn't believe them.
ⓐ despite ⓑ due to ⓒ but ⓓ so

9 We enjoyed the football match .... the dust storm.
ⓐ in spite ⓑ in case ⓒ despite ⓓ because

10 We had to change the plans .... problems we hadn't expected.
ⓐ owing to ⓑ because ⓒ although ⓓ so as to

11 .... enjoying the novel you lent me, I haven't finished it yet.
ⓐ In spite ⓑ As well as ⓒ Despite ⓓ Due to

12 .... the hotel was expensive, we enjoyed staying there.
ⓐ But ⓑ Even though ⓒ Because ⓓ Besides

13 Before ....to bed, Saif did his homework.
ⓐ went ⓑ go ⓒ gone ⓓ going

14 .... visiting Egypt, most tourists take photos.
ⓐ Although ⓑ Therefore ⓒ But ⓓ While

15 We couldn't buy the newspaper .... the shop was closed.
ⓐ so ⓑ because ⓒ but ⓓ Although

Fill in gap:

16 .... getting up early is advisable, many people get up late.
17 .... the doctor's skill, he couldn't save the patient's life.
18 Bravely .... they fought; they had no chance of winning.
19 .... his old age, he still runs the factory.
20 .... the bad storm, we couldn't go swimming.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 Because the traffic, I arrived at the office late. [........................]
22 Clever however he is, he failed the exam. [........................]
23 He missed the bus as he was late for his school. [........................]
24 Despite smoking is harmful, they can't give it up. [........................]
25 Neither Toka nor Jana know how to swim. [........................]

أشكال ing والمصدر **ing. forms or the infinitive**

❶ الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعدها **to + inf.**:

seem	يبدو	refuse	يرفض	decide	يقرر
volunteer	يتطوع	wish	يرغب	arrange	يرتب
tend	يميل	threaten	يهدد	agree	يوافق
swear	يقسم	prove	يثبت / يبرهن	expect	يتوقع
hurry	يسرع	prepare	يستعد	hope	يأمل
guarantee	يضمن	choose	يختار	learn	يتعلم
hesitate	يتردد	pretend	يتظاهر	offer	يعرض
seek	يسعى إلي	request	يطلب	plan	يخطط
fail	يفشل	deserve	يستحق	promise	يعد
		manage	يتمكن	want	يريد

✓ Toka **hopes to** be an engineer. ✓ Jana **promised to** study hard.

❷ الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعدها فعل مضاف له **ing**:

resist	يقاوم	spend	يقضي	deny	ينكر
resume	يستأنف	appreciate	يقدر	enjoy	يستمتع
put off	يؤجل	postpone	يؤجل	admit	يعترف
delay	يؤخر	fancy	يتخيل	avoid	يتجنب
miss	يفتقد	imagine	يتخيل	finish	ينهي
necessitate	يُحتم / يستلزم	complete	يكمل	practise	يمارس
can't help	لا يستطيع أن يمنع نفسه	involve	يتضمن	suggest	يقترح
		include	يشمل	dislike	يكره
consider	يفكر في	risk	يخاطر	understand	يفهم

✓ He **admitted stealing** the mobile. ✓ I **regret not travelling** abroad.

ينفي الفعل المضاف له **ing** باستخدام **not**:

✓ **Thank** you for **not making** noise. ✓ **I apologize** for not **coming** early.

❸ الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعدها **to + inf.** أو فعل مضاف له **ing** بدون اختلاف في المعني:

continue	يستمر	like	يحب	hate	يكره
start (begin)	يبدأ	prefer	يفضل	love	يحب

(اختلاف بسيط في المعني إذا أخذت **ing** الحديث بشكل عام ومع **to + inf.** الحديث بشكل مخصص (وقت الكلام)

ولكن للاحظ أنه إذا استخدمنا **would** قبل الأفعال السابقة فانه يأتي بعدها **to + inf.**

✓ I'd **love to meet** Mr Ahmed. ✓ I'd **like to meet** Mr Ahmed.

ولكن للاحظ:

Prefer... + V-ing... + to + ... V-ing....

✓ I **prefer** us**ing** the internet **to** watch**ing** TV.

❹ الأفعال والظروف الآتية يأتي بعدها **inf.** فقط بدون **to**:

let	يسمح	would rather	يفضل
make	يرغم	had better	ينبغي

✓ I'd **rather (better) meet** Mr Ahmed.

للاحظ (**إذا جاء بعدها فاعل يأتي بعدها ماضي بسيط**)

✓ The teacher **made** Ali **repeat** his homework again.
✓ I'd **rather** you **met** Mr Ahmed.

للحظ (إذا جاء make في المجهول يأتي بعدهم to+ inf.)

✓ The teacher **made** Ali **repeat** his homework again.

❺ الأفعال الآتية يمكن أن يأتي بعدها to + inf. أو فعل مضاف له ing مع وجود اختلاف في المعني:

stop	يتوقف	forget	ينسى
remember	يتذكر	regret	يأسف
try	يحاول / يجرب		

remember to + infinitive يتذكر أن يقوم بعمل شيء (لم يفعله)

✓ He **remembered to** call his friend.

remember + gerund يقوم بعمل شيء ثم يتذكر أنه (فعله)

✓ He **remembered watching** this film.

forget to + infinitive ينسي أن يفعل شيئا (لم يفعله)

✓ Nadia **forgot to** close the gate.

forget + gerund يفعل شيئا ثم ينسي أنه فعله

✓ Nadia **forgot reading** the novel.

regret to + infinitive يشعر بالأسف لأن يقول أو يخبر شخص شيئا ما

✓ He **regretted to** say that my son was loser.

regret + gerund يشعر بالندم علي شيء حدث

✓ He **regretted** watching this play. It was boring.

try to + infinitive يحاول عمل شيء (وغالبا لا ينجح)

✓ The student **tried to escape**, but the headmaster caught him.

try + gerund (يقوم بعمل شيء ليري نتيجته / يُجرب عمل شيء)

✓ Try **wearing** this dress. ✓ Try **taking** an aspirin.

stop to + infinitive يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئا

✓ He **stopped** to smoke.

stop + gerund يتوقف عن عمل شيء

✓ He **stopped** smoking.

❻ استخدام v + ing بعد to فى التعبيرات الآتية:

due to	بسبب	in addition to	بالإضافة إلى	take to	يعتاد علي
lead to	يؤدي إلى	thanks to	بفضل	be used to	معتاد
object to	يعترض علي	owing to	بسبب	get used to	يعتاد علي
look forward to	يتطلع إلي	be opposed to	معارض لـ	be accustomed to	معتاد علي

❼ يستخدم فعل مضاف له ing بعد التعبيرات الآتية

be busy	مشغول	can't stand	لا يحتمل	it's no good	لا فائدة من
don't mind	لا مانع	can't help	لا يتوقف عن	it's no use	لا فائدة من
feel like	يرغب/ يريد	how about	ماذا عن	it's a waste of money	مضيعة للمال
be worth	يستحق	what about	ماذا عن	it's a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت

✓ She **has difficulty** walking. ✓ It's a **waste of** time surfing the internet.

✓ I **feel like** having a cold drink.

❽ أفعال يأتي بعدها مفعول ثم to + inf. في المعلوم و في حالة المبني للمجهول تأتي to + inf. بعد الفعل مباشرة

advise	ينصح	encourage	يشجع	order	يأمر
allow	يسمح	expect	يتوقع	permit	يسمح

ask	يطلب	promise	يعد	persuade	يقنع
invite	يدعو	help	يساعد	force	يجبر
tell	يأمر	teach	يعلم	command	يأمر
choose	يختار	challenge	يتحدي	beg	يتوسل
require	يتطلب	want	يريد	instruct	يعطي توجيه

✓ I **advised** Ali **to come** to my birthday.
✓ Ali **was advised to** come to my birthday.

Important Notes

❶ في حالة وجود فعل بعد الصفات التالية نستخدم to + inf. :

happy / sad / glad / pleased / lucky / relieved / amazed.... + to inf.

✓ It is **difficult for** her **to get** up early.
✓ It was **easy for** Jana **to study** English.

❷ في حالة وجود فعل بعد الصفات أدوات الاستفهام : to + inf.

how to + inf. / what / how to + inf. / where to + inf. ....

✓ I don't know **how to go** to the club.
✓ He is in a tight corner; he didn't know **what to do.**

❸ لاحظ الفرق بين :

Like / would like / feel like

✓ Seif **likes** to play (playing) football.
✓ Seif 'd **like** to play football.
✓ Seif **feels like** playing football.

❹ الأفعال الآتية يستخدم بعدها المصدر ليدل علي أننا شاهدنا أو سمعنا الحدث بالكامل ويأتي بعدها الفعل مضافا لـه ing ليـدل علـي أننا سمعنا أو شاهدنا جزء من الحدث:

hear	يسمع	notice	يلاحظ
see	يري	watch	يشاهد

✓ **heard** Toka **sing** a song. = I heard the whole song.
✓ **heard** Toka **singing** a song. = I heard part of the song.

❺ استخدام to + inf. بعد الكلمات:

the first .../ the second ..../ the last ...../ the next.....

✓ Ahmed was **the first to get** the high mark.
✓ Toka was **the last to attend** the meeting.

❻ يُستخدم المصدر بدون to بعد الأفعال الناقصة:

**can / could / may / might / must / mustn't / needn't /
shall / should / will / would**

✓ They **must** attend the conference.
✓ She **can run** very quickly.

❼ فعل help يأتي بعده المصدر مع to أو بدون to

✓ Toka **helped** Jana **do** her homework.
✓ Toka **helped** Jana **to do** her homework.

❽ الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعدها ing في حالة عدم وجود مفعول، و يأتي بعدها to + inf. في حالة وجود مفعول:

advise	ينصح	forbid	يمنع	permit	يسمح
allow	يسمح	recommend	يوصي ب	encourage	يشجع

✓ I **advise** you **to read** this novel.
✓ I **advise reading** this novel.
✓ My Parents **allow** us **to** sleep late.
✓ My Parents **allow** sleeping late.

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He stopped............ and put his pen down.
ⓐ writing ⓑ to writing ⓒ write ⓓ to write

2 On my way home, I stopped............Al-Ahram Weekly as I enjoy it.
ⓐ bought ⓑ buying ⓒ buy ⓓ to buy

3 I stopped............coffee 2 years ago.
ⓐ drink ⓑ to drink ⓒ drinking ⓓ to drinking

4 A knife is used to............meat.
ⓐ cut ⓑ cutting ⓒ be cut ⓓ being cut

5 We are expected............late for the meeting today.
ⓐ be ⓑ being ⓒ to be ⓓ been

6 Maher starts............Geology this year.
ⓐ study ⓑ to studying ⓒ studying ⓓ studied

7 One of the boys admitted............ the window.
ⓐ to break ⓑ broke ⓒ had broken ⓓ breaking

8 Would you like............ coffee or tea?
ⓐ drink ⓑ to drink ⓒ are drinking ⓓ drinking

9 My friend is forced............ me in the exam.
ⓐ to help ⓑ help ⓒ helps ⓓ helping

10 I regretted............her in public. It was bad for her.
ⓐ Blame ⓑ blaming ⓒ to blame ⓓ to blaming

11 He denied............that bad thing. In fact, he was innocent.
ⓐ to do ⓑ did ⓒ doing ⓓ do

12 Are you busy............ this book ?
ⓐ read ⓑ to read ⓒ reading ⓓ reads

13 We'd really like............ on holiday but we don't have enough money.
ⓐ to going ⓑ be going ⓒ to go ⓓ going

14 I can't imagine............in the city. I enjoy its excitement and urban life.
ⓐ not living ⓑ to live ⓒ living ⓓ live

15 She spent too much time............in the garden yesterday.
ⓐ played ⓑ playing ⓒ plays ⓓ was playing

Fill in gap:

16 A saw is used to .... wood.

17 Are you used to........... up early?

18 I remembered........... her at a party once.

19 I suggest that you........... to a doctor.

20 My uncle stopped........... football after he hurt his leg.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 I went to the party yesterday, but I didn't remember telling Adel about my new car. [..............................]

22 They made him paying money back to them. [..............................]

23 Stop to shout. You are giving me a headache. [..............................]

24 On our way to Alex, we stopped buying some fast food. [..............................]

25 If you don't stop to waste your time, I'll punish you. [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

① Do not forget............ off the light before you go out.
ⓐ switch ⓑ to switch ⓒ switching ⓓ switched

② He suggested that she............a study plan for this year.
ⓐ making ⓑ to make ⓒ made ⓓ make

③ I remember............ that funny man last year when he amused us with his jokes
ⓐ to meet ⓑ meet ⓒ meeting ⓓ had met

④ I'm sure she intends............to Paris next year.
ⓐ will travel ⓑ to travel ⓒ to travelling ⓓ travel

⑤ When I saw my friend, I stopped............ hands with him.
ⓐ to shake ⓑ shaking ⓒ shake ⓓ to shaking

⑥ We all recommended............that book.
ⓐ that read ⓑ that he read ⓒ to read ⓓ to reading

⑦ She expects............ her friends at the party.
ⓐ seeing ⓑ to seeing ⓒ to see ⓓ see

⑧ You should avoid............ friends with such bad people.
ⓐ to make ⓑ making ⓒ makes ⓓ to making

⑨ I would prefer to help my father rather than............ TV.
ⓐ watch ⓑ to watch ⓒ watching ⓓ watched

⑩ I was made............ before the meeting started.
ⓐ leave ⓑ to leave ⓒ leaving ⓓ left

⑪ I avoid............ bad things which make my parents upset.
ⓐ to do ⓑ did ⓒ doing ⓓ do

⑫ The headmaster doesn't allow............to school late.
ⓐ to come ⓑ coming ⓒ came ⓓ with coming

⑬ He hopes ....as the best student in the class.
ⓐ will choosing ⓑ choosing ⓒ to choose ⓓ to be chosen

⑭ We decided .... in a five-star hotel.
ⓐ to stay ⓑ staying ⓒ to staying ⓓ stay

⑮ I haven't finished .... all my jobs yet.
ⓐ do ⓑ to do ⓒ to doing ⓓ doing

Fill in gap:

⑯ Would you like........... the faculty of arts?
⑰ Civil engineers get used to........... in the sun.
⑱ She refused .... apologise for the bad manner in which she had spoken.
⑲ You should avoid........... friends with such bad people.
⑳ Please, remember .... phone your friend.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

㉑ On my way home I stopped buying a newspaper. [..............................]
㉒ I like to watching Indian series. [..............................]
㉓ Have you finished to read the book I lent you? [..............................]
㉔ My sister objected doing all the washing up alone. [..............................]
㉕ He felt exhausted as he has never been used to do such hard work. [..............................]

3 Advanced Exercises

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I'd............a visit to Paris next year.
ⓐ like pay ⓑ like to paying ⓒ like paying ⓓ like to pay

2 I couldn't meet him as he was busy .... the files in his computer.
ⓐ arranges ⓑ arranging ⓒ arrange ⓓ arranged

3 I can`t forget............ It was a painful experience.
ⓐ to bully ⓑ being bullied ⓒ bully ⓓ bullied

4 Your car certainly needs............before your long drive.
ⓐ checking ⓑ be checked ⓒ to check ⓓ checked

5 Mohammed'd rather go out than............at home.
ⓐ stay ⓑ stays ⓒ staying ⓓ stayed

6 Ali was the first............the story.
ⓐ read ⓑ reading ⓒ to read ⓓ has read

7 He was made............ a fine for driving his car fast.
ⓐ to pay ⓑ pay ⓒ paying ⓓ paid

8 My father drives me............ my school every morning.
ⓐ of ⓑ about ⓒ with ⓓ to

9 I remember..........that man when I was nine.
ⓐ being met ⓑ met ⓒ to meet ⓓ meeting

10 My teacher advised............a course during the summer vacation.
ⓐ taking ⓑ to take ⓒ takes ⓓ be take

11 Never stop .... healthy food.
ⓐ to eat ⓑ to eating ⓒ eating ⓓ eat

12 When the singer stopped ...., every one clapped their hands.
ⓐ singing ⓑ to sing ⓒ is singing ⓓ sings

13 We chose............by train.
ⓐ by travel ⓑ on travel ⓒ travelling ⓓ to travel

14 I'm looking forward .... the new art exhibit.
ⓐ to see ⓑ to be seen ⓒ seeing ⓓ to seeing

15 Ahmed was willing ....this team. He trained well.
ⓐ joins ⓑ join ⓒ to join ⓓ joined

Fill in gap:

16 Many people in our town .... to build the new bridge.
17 My teacher advised me to practise .... a lot of sport.
18 Although he is a diabetic, he can't help .... chocolate.
19 Parents shouldn't .... bullying among the members of the family.
20 He remembered .... off the gas before he went out. He is sure.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 Our house was robbed last night since we forgot locking the front door. [..........................]
22 The accused boy denied steal the ruler from his classmate's bag. [..........................]
23 I was made pay a fine for not wearing the seat belt. [..........................]
24 I forgot taking the report with me, so I had to go back to get it. [..........................]
25 You should try to go up in a balloon. You'd really love it. [..........................]

التمـــني والـــندم Wishing and regret

I wish / If only

① يستخدم الماضي البسيط بعد I wish / If only للتعبير عن موقف غير حقيقي في المضارع (امنية في المضارع)

✓ I wish I knew what to do about the problem. (I don't know)
✓ I wish you didn't have to go so soon. (You have to go)
✓ Do you wish you lived near the sea? (You don't live near the sea.)
✓ I wish I knew where I put my keys. (I don't know where I put my keys.)
✓ I wish I were tall. (I am short.)
✓ I wish you had a car. (You don't have a car.)
✓ If only I lived an exciting life. (I don't live an exciting life.)
✓ Jana wishes she didn't have to work hard. (Jana has to work hard.)

② يستخدم الماضي التام بعد I wish / If only في حالة التعبير عن موقف في الماضي (امنية في الماضي) (ندم)

✓ I wish I'd known about the party. I would have gone if I'd known. (I didn't know.)
✓ It was a stupid thing to say. I wish I hadn't said it. (I said it)
✓ I wish I had applied for that job. (I didn't apply for that job.)
✓ I wish I had met Jana before. (I didn't meet Jana before.)
✓ I wish I had studied hard last year. (I didn't study hard last year.)
✓ If only Toka hadn't failed the English test. (Toka failed the English test.)
✓ Ali's going on a trip to Alex soon. I wish I was going too. (I'm not going.)
✓ If only I hadn't eaten so much cake yesterday. (I ate so much cake yesterday.)

للحظ في حالة وجود جملتين بعد I wish / If only تعتبرات متساوين مع حالات if الثانية و الثالثة :

✓ I wish I hadn't wasted all my money. I would have bought a car.
✓ If only she hadn't complained to the manager, everything would have been all right.

➲ **I wish I could have (done something) = I regret that I could not do it:**

✓ I hear the party was great. I wish I could have gone. (but I couldn't go)

③ في حالة التعبير عن المستقبل تستخدم .could+ inf مع (I - we) ويستخدم would مع / she / he / you / they
it أو يمكننا استخدام could للتعبير عن المقدرة و تستخدم would للتعبير عن الشكوى

✓ I wish I could read quickly. ✓ If only I could drive a car.

➲ **We often use I wish ... would to complain about a situation:**

✓ The phone has been ringing for five minutes. I wish someone would answer it.
✓ I wish you'd do something instead of just sitting and doing nothing.

Compare

➲ **We use I wish ... would ... to say that we want something to happen. But we do not use I wish ... would ... to say how we would like things to be.**

✓ I wish Sarah would come. (= I want her to come)
but I wish Sarah was (or were) here now. (NOT I wish Sarah would be)
✓ I wish somebody would buy me a car.
but I wish I had a car. (NOT I wish I would have)

➲ **We use I wish ... wouldn't ... to complain about things that people do repeatedly:**

✓ I wish you wouldn't keep interrupting me. (= please don't interrupt me)

Important Notes

في حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد **wish** يأتي بعدها **to+ inf.** بمعني يريد

wish to + inf. = want to

- ✓ I **wish to see** the principal, please.
- ✓ Toka **wishes to achieve** her goals.

في حالة وجود ضمير او اسم بعد **wish** يأتي بعدها اسم

wish ... + n. (wish someone something)

- ✓ I **wish** Jana a happy **life**.
- ✓ I **wish** you a speedy **recovery**.
- ✓ I **wish** you **all the best** in the future.
- ✓ I saw Mark before the exam and he **wished** me good **luck**.

hope

تختلف **hope** عن **wish** في حالة وجود **hope** نستخدم في الجملة التالية لها مضارع بسيط او مستقبل بسيط

hope + فاعل + future simple / present simple

- ✓ I **hope** Toka **becomes** an engineer.
- ✓ I **hope** Toka **will become** an engineer.

Compare **I wish and I hope:**

- ✓ I **wish** you **a pleasant stay** here.
- ✓ I **hope** you **have** a pleasant stay here. (NOT I wish you have)

regret

يمكننا استخدام **regret** للتعبير عن الندم ويأتي بعدها **v+ing**

وتستخدم للتعبير عن الأسف في المضارع ويأتي بعدها **to+inf.**

regret + v + ing يندم علي
regret + to + inf. يأسف علي

➲ **I regret doing something = I did it and now I'm sorry about it:**

- ✓ I now **regret saying** what I said. I shouldn't have said it.
- ✓ Do you **regret not going** to college?

➲ **I regret to say / to tell you / to inform you (= I'm sorry that I have to say....etc.).**

- ✓ We **regret to inform** you that your application has been unsuccessful.
  = I am **sorry** to tell you that your son is a loser.
- ✓ I **regret** to tell you that your son is a loser.
  = I am sorry to tell you that your son is a loser.

في حالة وجود فعل مضاف له **ing** بعد **regret** نستخدم الماضي التام بعد **I wish** للتعبير عن الندم

- ✓ I **regret** not **studying** hard. = **I wish** I **had studied** hard.
- ✓ I **regret wasting** my time last year. = **I wish** I **hadn't wasted** my time last year.

Wise Saying

I never dream of success. I worked for it

لم أحلم يوماً بالنجاح ، بل عملت لتحقيقه

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I wish I ....go to the stadium tomorrow.
ⓐ can ⓑ could ⓒ will ⓓ may
2. I ....he would attend the next meeting.
ⓐ wish ⓑ hope ⓒ eager ⓓ want
3. I wish I .... on a desert island; it's my dearest dream.
ⓐ had lived ⓑ could live ⓒ will live ⓓ will have lived
4. If only I ....high marks last exam.
ⓐ had had ⓑ have had ⓒ have ⓓ had
5. I wish she .... me!
ⓐ loved ⓑ love ⓒ loves ⓓ will love
6. If only I .... it was so easy!
ⓐ had known ⓑ knew ⓒ would know ⓓ know
7. If only I .... here yesterday, the accident wouldn't have happened.
ⓐ had been ⓑ was ⓒ were ⓓ would be
8. That music! I wish they .... it down!
ⓐ would turn ⓑ turn ⓒ could turn ⓓ have turned
9. I wish we .... that old car of yours.
ⓐ bought ⓑ hadn't bought ⓒ didn't buy ⓓ wouldn't have bought
10. If only she .... my advice, things would have been better.
ⓐ take ⓑ would take ⓒ took ⓓ had taken
11. If only I............ Alex during the summer holiday last year.
ⓐ could go ⓑ would go ⓒ went ⓓ had gone
12. If only my wife .... here. It's a pity she won't come back till tomorrow.
ⓐ has been ⓑ would be ⓒ were ⓓ will be
13. I wish I........... harder when I had the time.
ⓐ would work ⓑ have worked ⓒ will work ⓓ had worked
14. I don't earn much money. I wish I............ much money now.
ⓐ earn ⓑ had earned ⓒ earned ⓓ earns
15. I'm looking forward to having a new car. So I wish I............ have a new one.
ⓐ might ⓑ could ⓒ would ⓓ must

Fill in gap:

16. I wish I .... the answer to that question.
17. I wish I .... know how to play the guitar!
18. I wish she .... me the truth!
19. If only it .... rained a little more last spring.
20. I wish I .... taller!

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21. I live very far from my office. I wish I will be nearer. [..............................]
22. Jana wishes she will sing well. [..............................]
23. If only I aren't short. [..............................]
24. This house is too small. If only we had had a bigger one! [..............................]
25. It's a pity you said that. If only you have kept your mouth shut. [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If only I .... more time for my hobbies but I don't.
ⓐ have ⓑ has ⓒ had ⓓ am

2 I wish .... you in the summer, if possible.
ⓐ to visit ⓑ visiting ⓒ could visit ⓓ had visited

3 I wish I .... my time in the holidays.
ⓐ wouldn't waste ⓑ wasted ⓒ had wasted ⓓ hadn't wasted

4 I wish he hadn't sold his car .... week.
ⓐ last ⓑ next ⓒ a ⓓ every

5 He wishes he .... his PHD next month.
ⓐ would get ⓑ will get ⓒ gets ⓓ had got

6 I'm sorry, I didn't bring my camera. I wish I............ it.
ⓐ would bring ⓑ had brought ⓒ brought ⓓ could bring

7 I really regret playing football in the street. If only I .... done that.
ⓐ had ⓑ hadn't ⓒ can't ⓓ couldn't

8 If only I............ well, I'd have got high marks.
ⓐ had answered ⓑ have answered ⓒ answered ⓓ answer

9 If only she .... my advice, things would have been easier.
ⓐ had taken ⓑ has taken ⓒ took ⓓ would take

10 I wish I............ at the wedding, but I was in New York.
ⓐ would ⓑ could ⓒ were ⓓ had been

11 I feel sick. I wish I .... so much.
ⓐ had eater ⓑ hadn't eaten ⓒ wouldn't have eaten ⓓ wouldn't

12 Ali would like to give up smoking but he can't. If only he .... give it up.
ⓐ will ⓑ could ⓒ can ⓓ would

13 It's a pity she didn't go to the wedding party. She wished she .... there.
ⓐ had gone ⓑ could go ⓒ will go ⓓ went

14 I wish I ....have to work tomorrow, but unfortunately I do.
ⓐ don't ⓑ didn't ⓒ wouldn't ⓓ won't

15 The weather is horrible. I wish it ....raining.
ⓐ would stop ⓑ stopped ⓒ stops ⓓ will stop

Fill in gap:

16 I haven't got any friends. I wish........... some.
17 I I wish you........... the first prize next time.
18 If only he .... with us now.
19 Nada won't come to my birthday party. I wish she........... come.
20 I wish I........... taller, I would play basketball.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 I wish I can meet you tomorrow. [..............................]
22 The play was really enjoyable. I wish you had had with us. [..............................]
23 It was too late. I wish I come earlier. [..............................]
24 If only I listened to you before I bought the car. [..............................]
25 I wish I had known where I left my jacket. [..............................]

3 Advanced Exercises

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I wish you ....smoking. I'm sure you will have better health.
ⓐ stop ⓑ will stop ⓒ would stop ⓓ have stopped

2 I wish she....... this car; it has caused her a lot of trouble.
ⓐ doesn't buy ⓑ won't buy ⓒ didn't buy ⓓ hadn't bought

3 He wishes he hadn't neglected his work. This means that he actually...... his work.
ⓐ can't have neglected ⓑ is still neglecting
ⓒ neglected ⓓ had not neglected

4 I regret starting to smoke; I wish I .... smoking.
ⓐ hadn't started ⓑ wouldn't start ⓒ didn't start ⓓ can't start

5 I wish I .... a pilot when I grow up.
ⓐ will be ⓑ could be ⓒ were ⓓ had been

6 I can't afford to buy my wife a gold armlet but I wish I ....
ⓐ will ⓑ have ⓒ had ⓓ could

7 I ....you will come to my wedding.
ⓐ hope ⓑ hop ⓒ wash ⓓ wish

8 He regretted not attending yesterday's meeting. He wished he ....there.
ⓐ would be ⓑ could be ⓒ was ⓓ had been

9 She wished she .... well for the last exam; she couldn't answer many questions.
ⓐ will revise ⓑ revised ⓒ hadn't revised ⓓ had revised

10 She wishes to .... with me.
ⓐ is ⓑ be ⓒ were ⓓ would be

11 Adel travelled to Alex by bus, which wasn't comfortable. He wishes he.... by train.
ⓐ had travelled ⓑ would travel ⓒ travelled ⓓ has travelled

12 Ahmed wishes he .... a lot of money when he was younger.
ⓐ could save ⓑ will have saved ⓒ saved ⓓ had saved

13 I didn't follow my father's advice. I wish I .... upon his useful advice.
ⓐ was acted ⓑ would act ⓒ acted ⓓ had acted

14 I wish I were an engineer. Really, I .... an engineer.
ⓐ weren't ⓑ had been ⓒ am not ⓓ must be

15 You shouldn't have made that mistake. I wish you .... making that mistake.
ⓐ will avoid ⓑ avoided ⓒ have avoided ⓓ had avoided

Fill in gap:

16 I wish there .... something I was really interested in.
17 I'd like to give up smoking but I can't. If only I .... give it up.
18 I wish the school holidays .... longer.
19 I expect he will arrive soon. I wish he........... do that.
20 I was very cold. I wish it .... warmer.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 What a careless driver! I wish he is more careful; two children were injured. [..............]
22 I wish to were a policeman! [..............................]
23 I wish I learnt how to drive, I would have got a licence. [..............................]
24 It's starting to snow, I wish I were my coat. [..............................]
25 I regretted not seeing her off at the airport. I wish I did so. [..............................]

Causative السببيـــــــة

لاحظ الفرق بين

I **cleaned** my room.	قمت بتنظيف الغرفة بنفسي.
I **had (got)** my room **cleaned**.	حصلت علي غرفتي منظفه. (شخص اخر قام بذلك)

مصدر بدون to	inf.	مفعول عاقل	have - let - make	في المبني للمعلوم

- ✓ The teacher **had** us **do** some extra work today.
- ✓ Toka **let** Jana **play** with her.
- ✓ Jana **makes** Toka **do** her homework before sleeping.

مصدر	to+ inf.	مفعول عاقل	get - allow - force - cause - permit	في المبني للمعلوم

- ✓ Al Daifi **got** Seif **to go** with him to the club.
- ✓ The bright light **caused** her **to blink**.
- ✓ The doctor **allowed** the patient **to eat** anything.
- ✓ I **forced** my daughters **to sleep** early.
- ✓ My father **permits** me **to go** out at night every Friday.

التصريف الثالث للفعل	P.P	مفعول غير عاقل أو عاقل في جملة مجهول	have - let - make - get - allow...	في المبني للمجهول

- ✓ I **have** my hair **cut**.
- ✓ I **had** my teeth **checked** yesterday.
- ✓ Mona **made** Mai **hit** by her teacher.
- ✓ We always **get** our clothes **washed**.
- ✓ Ali is **getting** his car **repaired**.
- ✓ Mai **had** the roof **repaired** yesterday.

Important Notes

➲ **We use have something done to say that we arrange for somebody else to do something for us.**

Compare

✓ Jana **repaired** the roof. (= she repaired it herself)

Jana **had** the roof **repaired**. (= she arranged for somebody else to repair it)

✓ "Did you **make** those curtains yourself?"

☞ "Yes, I enjoy making things."

"Did you **have** those curtains **made**?"

☞ "No, I made them myself."

➲ **We use have something done as a replacement to the passive.**

- ✓ Ali **had their bags stolen** while he was travelling. "His bags were stolen."
- ✓ Ahmed **had** his nose **broken** in a fight. "His nose was broken."

➲ **We can use "get something done" instead of "have something done":**

- ✓ When are you going to **get the roof repaired**? (= have the roof repaired)
- ✓ I think you should **get your hair cut** really short.

have	object	past participle
Lisa had	the roof	repaired yesterday.
Where did you have	your hair	cut?
Your hair looks nice. Have you had	it	cut?
Our neighbour has just had	a garage	built.
We are having	the house	painted this week.
How often do you have	your car	serviced?
I think you should have	that coat	cleaned.
I don't like having	my picture	taken.

ملاحظات

لاحظ صيغة السؤال والإجابة مع **causative**

- ✓ Do you usually **get** your room **cleaned**?
  ☞No, I clean it myself.
- ✓ Did you **have** your meal **prepared**?
  ☞No, I didn't (have it prepared). I prepared it myself.

لاحظ صيغة النفي و الأمر مع **causative**

- ✓ I won't **get** my room **tidied**. I'll tidy it by myself.
- ✓ Get your hair **cut**! It's too long.

يمكن استخدام **causative** في كل الأزمنة كما يلي.

مضارع بسيط	**active**	▶ She **has** her teacher **explain** the lesson.
		▶ She **gets** her teacher **to explain** the lesson.
	passive	▶ She **has (gets)** the lesson **explained**.
مضارع مستمر	**active**	▶ She **is having** her teacher **explain** the lesson.
		▶ She **is getting** her teacher **to explain** the lesson.
	passive	▶ She **is having (is getting)** the lesson **explained**.
مضارع تام	**active**	▶ She **has had** her teacher **explain** the lesson.
		▶ She **has got** her teacher **to explain** the lesson.
	passive	▶ She **has had (has got)** the lesson **explained**.
ماضي بسيط	**active**	▶ She **had** her teacher **explain** the lesson.
		▶ She **got** her teacher **to explain** the lesson.
	passive	▶ She **had (got)** the lesson **explained**.
ماضي مستمر	**active**	▶ She **was having** her teacher **explain** the lesson.
		▶ She **was getting** her teacher **to explain** the lesson.
	passive	▶ She **was having (was getting)** the lesson **explained**.
ماضي تام	**active**	▶ She **had had** her teacher **explain** the lesson.
		▶ She **had got** her teacher **to explain** the lesson.
	passive	▶ She **had had (had got)** the lesson **explained**.
مستقبل بسيط	**active**	▶ She **will have** her teacher **explain** the lesson.
		▶ She **will get** her teacher **to explain** the lesson.
	passive	▶ She **will have (will get)** the lesson **explained**.

Wise Saying

Do it with passion, or not at all

إما أن تقوم بما تحب ، أو لا تقم به على الإطلاق

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You should get your blood pressure............from time to time.
ⓐ measure ⓑ to measure ⓒ measured ⓓ measuring

2 I went to the mechanic to have............ .
ⓐ repaired my car ⓑ my car repaired ⓒ my car repair ⓓ my car repairs

3 I want to get a carpenter .... the front door of my house.
ⓐ fix ⓑ fixed ⓒ to fix ⓓ be fixed

4 I had my teeth............ .
ⓐ checked ⓑ check ⓒ to check ⓓ checks

5 I had my dentist .... my teeth.
ⓐ checks ⓑ check ⓒ checked ⓓ to check

6 I will have my car ....
ⓐ repaired ⓑ cooked ⓒ trekked ⓓ bitten

7 The examiner made us ....our identification in order to be admitted to the test.
ⓐ showing ⓑ show ⓒ to show ⓓ showed

8 Yesterday, the robbers..........the staff lie on the floor.
ⓐ made ⓑ got ⓒ have ⓓ allowed

9 What made you ....it ?
ⓐ do ⓑ to do ⓒ doing ⓓ done

10 You should have your visa ....before it expires.
ⓐ extended ⓑ to extend ⓒ be extended ⓓ to be extended

11 If you don't get out of my house, I'll have you ....
ⓐ to arrest ⓑ arresting ⓒ arrested ⓓ be arrested

12 I got my friend ....me to the airport.
ⓐ to drive ⓑ driving ⓒ drive ⓓ driven

13 I don't know if my boss will let me.......... the day off.
ⓐ took ⓑ to take ⓒ take ⓓ taken

14 I had my friend ....me to the airport.
ⓐ to drive ⓑ driving ⓒ drive ⓓ driven

15 We can't go into the living room because we are...........
ⓐ having it decorated ⓑ having decorated it
ⓒ having it decorate ⓓ having decorate it

Fill in gap:

16 Our neighbour .... his child kidnapped yesterday.
17 Why don't you have a mechanic .... at your car?
18 His wife .... him to stop drinking last year.
19 Instead of buying a new pair of shoes, I .... my old ones repaired.
20 We'll get Jana .... food.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 He had us to cut our hair. [..............................]
22 Mother had Jana tidied her room before she went out. [..............................]
23 I got my car checked at the garage once a month. [..............................]
24 Every six months, I have my eyes test by the oculist. [..............................]
25 I don't think I can get Ali agree to this suggestion. [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

❶ I usually .... once a month.
ⓐ make my hair ⓑ have cut my hair ⓒ get my hair ⓓ have my hair cut

❷ If you ask nicely, Mother will probably..........a piece of cake.
ⓐ let you have ⓑ get you to have ⓒ make you have ⓓ to let you have

❸ What makes me ....all the time, stuffs up my nose?
ⓐ cough ⓑ to cough ⓒ coughing ⓓ coughs

❹ Would you approve if I had this article ....?
ⓐ to be copied ⓑ to copy ⓒ been copied ⓓ copied

❺ My son was made..........the windows before he could go outside to play.
ⓐ washes ⓑ wash ⓒ to wash ⓓ washed

❻ He has his students ....so much time. He is a conscientious teacher.
ⓐ not to waste ⓑ to waste ⓒ not waste ⓓ waste

❼ Alice stopped at the service station to have the tank.......... .
ⓐ filling ⓑ filled ⓒ to fill ⓓ fill

❽ Seif really wanted a dog, but his parents wouldn't ....him have a pet.
ⓐ let ⓑ get ⓒ permit ⓓ allow

❾ I'm afraid Jana .... her visa application refused.
ⓐ has got ⓑ have ⓒ has ⓓ get

❿ I had a hard time ....his house.
ⓐ find ⓑ to find ⓒ found ⓓ finding

⓫ The government TV commercials are trying to get people .... smoking.
ⓐ to stopping ⓑ to stop ⓒ stop ⓓ stopped

⓬ Don't let yourself ....
ⓐ cheated ⓑ cheating ⓒ be cheated ⓓ being cheated

⓭ Diane thinks television is a waste of time, so she won't..........her children watch TV.
ⓐ allow ⓑ get ⓒ let ⓓ have

⓮ I.......... Jana to lend me some money, so I could go to a movie last night.
ⓐ am having ⓑ got ⓒ had ⓓ am getting

⓯ The farmer .... by the vet.
ⓐ had checked his horse ⓑ had his horse checked
ⓒ get checked his horse ⓓ had checked his horse

Fill in gap:

⓰ He looked forward to .... his homework done by his classmate.
⓱ I had my back .... by my doctor last month.
⓲ We were .... to read a lot of boring history books at school.
⓳ Will your parents .... you go to the party?
⓴ We know what........... the river to get polluted.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

㉑ All stores must have cameras install. [.............................]
㉒ I had had my kitchen sink checked, at six yesterday. [.............................]
㉓ I had my car to wash yesterday. One of the servants did that for me. [.............................]
㉔ She is angry because she made her purse stolen this morning. [.............................]
㉕ We're going to get a maid help us at home. [.............................]

so - such - too - enough

يتم استخدامها لتقوية المعني

① صفة / حال (فقط بدون اسم) **so** جداً

- ✓ I didn't like the book. The story was **so** stupid.
- ✓ I like Jana and Toka. They are **so** nice.
- ✓ It's a beautiful day, isn't it? It's **so** warm.

جملة **that**
صفة / حال (فقط بدون اسم)
اسم يعد مفرد + (a - an) + صفة
اسم يعد جمع + (many - few)
اسم لا يعد + (much - little)
so جداً...... لدرجة أن

- ✓ The book was **so good that** I couldn't put it down.
- ✓ I was **so tired that** I fell asleep in the armchair.
- ✓ It was **so old a car that** we couldn't buy it.
- ✓ I have **so many toys that** you can share me.

➲ **We usually leave out that:** **لاحظ أن يمكننا حذف that**

- ✓ I was **so** tired I fell asleep.

يمكننا استخدام

..... so + (many - few - much - little) + noun

- ✓ It was **so** hot so I drunk **so much water**.
- ✓ I have **so many books** in my library.

② اسم +(صفة / حال) **such** جداً

- ✓ I didn't like the book. It was **such a** stupid story.
- ✓ I like Liz and Joe. They are **such** nice people.
- ✓ It was a great holiday. We had **such a** good time.

جملة **that**
اسم (فقط)
اسم يعد مفرد + صفة / حال a - an
اسم يعد جمع أو لا يعد + صفة / حال
such جداً...... لدرجة أن

- ✓ It was **such a useful book that** Farouk read it twice.
- ✓ We are **such clever boys that** we can get the high marks.
- ✓ It is **such expensive furniture that** we can't afford buying it.
- ✓ It was **such nice weather that** we spent the whole day on the beach.

➲ **We usually leave out that:**

- ✓ It was **such** nice weather we spent the whole day on the beach.

يمكننا استخدام

.... such + اسم

- ✓ You mustn't trust her as she is **such a liar**.
- ✓ You always think good things are going to happen. You're **such an** optimist.

❸ صفة / حال too جداً

- ✓ He has suffered a mild heart attack - nothing **too** serious.
- ✓ Don't come **too** near me - you might catch my cold.
- ✓ If we all work together, it shouldn't take **too** long.

مصدر to صفة / حال (سلبي) / (اسم / ضمير مفعول for) صفة / حال too جداً...... لدرجة ألا

- ✓ Let's get a taxi. It's **too** far **to** walk home from here.
- ✓ She's **too** young **to** have a driving licence.
- ✓ The pool is **too** deep **to swim** in.
- ✓ The coffee was **too** hot for Al Daifi **to drink**.

يمكننا استخدام

too much + اسم

- ✓ This project cost us **too much money**.

❹ مصدر to

enough	صفة / حال
enough for اسم/ضمير مفعول	صفة / حال

بدرجة كافية أن

- ✓ Ali is **clever enough to answer** the difficult questions.
- ✓ I am sure he will run **quickly enough**.

يمكننا استخدام

enough + اسم (يعد / لا يعد)

- ✓ I don't have **enough money**. ✓ She doesn't have **enough tickets** for all of us.
- ✓ I can't run very far. I don't have **enough energy**.

➲ **We also use enough alone (without a noun):**

- ✓ We don't need to stop for petrol. We've got enough.

Important Notes

so long	➲	I haven't seen her for **so long**.
such a long time	➲	I haven't seen her for **such a long time**. (not so long time)
so far	➲	I didn't know it was **so far**.
such a long way	➲	I didn't know it was **such a long way**.
so much, so many	➲	I'm sorry I'm late – there was **so much** traffic.
such a lot (of)	➲	I'm sorry I'm late – there was **such a lot of** traffic.

Compare **too ... and not .... enough:**

- ✓ You never stop working. You work **too hard**. (= more than is necessary)
- ✓ You're lazy. You don't work **hard enough**. (= less than is necessary)

Notice

- ✓ The food was very hot. We couldn't eat it.
  = The food was **so hot that** we couldn't eat it.
  = The food was **too hot to** eat. (without it)

إذا جاءت **so** بداية الجملة نستخدم بعدها صيغة سؤال

So صفة / حال +فعل مساعد+ فاعل + that ......جملة....

- ✓ **So** dark **was it** that we could hardly see.
- ✓ **So** lazy **is he** that he never helps out with the housework.

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I didn't like the book. The story was .... stupid.
ⓐ so ⓑ such ⓒ to ⓓ enough

2 I will let you know tomorrow. Is that soon ....?
ⓐ so ⓑ such ⓒ too ⓓ enough

3 This question is too difficult ....
ⓐ for answer ⓑ for me answer ⓒ to be answered ⓓ to answering

4 It was .... nice weather that we spent the whole day on the beach.
ⓐ so ⓑ such ⓒ such a ⓓ such an

5 I didn't realise it was such ....
ⓐ house an old ⓑ old a house ⓒ old house ⓓ an old house

6 You mustn't drive .... fast on these roads!
ⓐ so ⓑ such ⓒ such a ⓓ so a

7 It was.......... horrible weather that we stayed in.
ⓐ so ⓑ such ⓒ such a ⓓ so much

8 The student found the exam .... easy to answer well.
ⓐ so ⓑ such ⓒ enough ⓓ too

9 She's not old .... to have a driving licence.
ⓐ such ⓑ so ⓒ enough ⓓ too

10 Some of us had to sit on the floor because there weren't .... chairs.
ⓐ so ⓑ such ⓒ too ⓓ enough

11 The doctor has .... many patients that he could not see them all.
ⓐ so ⓑ such ⓒ enough ⓓ too

12 The mountaineer climbed .... that he couldn't breathe.
ⓐ such a high ⓑ so high ⓒ such highly ⓓ so highly

13 So badly............ that his father decided to punish him.
ⓐ did he behave ⓑ does he behave ⓒ was he behaved ⓓ he behaved

14 It was such a wonderful film .... I watch it three times.
ⓐ there ⓑ this ⓒ then ⓓ that

15 It was............ useful information that we nearly know.
ⓐ so ⓑ such a ⓒ such ⓓ too

Fill in gap:

16 I have to go. I didn't realise it was .... late.
17 I think she works too hard. She looks .... tired all the time.
18 They've got .... much money they don't know what to do with it.
19 I like Liz and Joe. They're .... nice people.
20 The weather is beautiful, isn't it? I didn't expect it to be .... nice day.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 He is lucky to marry such pretty a woman! I hope I am in his shoes! [..............................]
22 I didn't like the book. It was too a stupid story. [..............................]
23 It was so nice coffee that I had two cups. [..............................]
24 It was so a beautiful house. [..............................]
25 She's very pretty. She's got such a beautiful eyes. [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We don't have .... money to go on holiday right now.
ⓐ so ⓑ such ⓒ too ⓓ enough

2 The book was so .... that I couldn't put it down.
ⓐ good ⓑ a good ⓒ will ⓓ a well

3 I can't run very far. I don't have .... energy.
ⓐ so ⓑ such ⓒ too ⓓ enough

4 I'm sorry I'm late – there was .... much traffic.
ⓐ so ⓑ such ⓒ to ⓓ enough

5 I'm sorry I'm late – there was .... a lot of traffic.
ⓐ so ⓑ such ⓒ too ⓓ enough

6 You never stop working. You work ....
ⓐ hard so ⓑ such hard ⓒ too hard ⓓ hard enough

7 I can't run very far. I'm not ....
ⓐ such fit ⓑ fit too ⓒ fit enough ⓓ enough fit

8 The box was too heavy for me .... by myself.
ⓐ to lifting ⓑ to lift ⓒ lift ⓓ lifting

9 They had six children. They hadn't expected to have ....
ⓐ so ⓑ such ⓒ so many ⓓ so much

10 There were .... people.
ⓐ so ⓑ such ⓒ so many ⓓ so much

11 She is.....organized that if you enter her room, you'll find everything in its place.
ⓐ so good ⓑ such ⓒ so well ⓓ enough

12 You are to blame. You didn't train .... to win that game.
ⓐ too hard ⓑ hard enough ⓒ so hard ⓓ such hard

13 I can't walk .... to keep up with you.
ⓐ too fast ⓑ fast enough ⓒ so fast ⓓ such fast

14 It was .... hot weather that we turned on the air conditioning.
ⓐ such a ⓑ so ⓒ such ⓓ too

15 English language takes .... patience to learn it properly.
ⓐ so ⓑ enough ⓒ too ⓓ such

Fill in gap:

16 I didn't realise you lived .... long way from the city centre.
17 The party was really great. It was .... shame you couldn't come.
18 It was .... boring movie that I fell asleep while I was watching it.
19 Everything is .... expensive these days, isn't it?
20 He always looks good. He wears .... nice clothes.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 It's difficult to understand him because he speaks enough quietly. [..............................]
22 It was a great holiday. We had such good time. [..............................]
23 I was surprised that he looked too well after his recent illness. [..............................]
24 I couldn't believe the news. It was enough shock. [..............................]
25 The food at the hotel was such awful. [..............................]

Modal verbs

Giving Advice: Should & Shouldn't

إسداء النصح
باستخدم يجب ولا يجب

- نستخدم **should / shouldn't** للنصيحة لنقول أن شيء ما جيداً (ينبغي فعله) أو غير جيد (لا ينبغي فعله).
- بعد **should / shouldn't** يأتي الفعل في المصدر (بدون اي اضافات و بدون **to**).
- تأتى **should / shouldn't** مع جميع الضمائر و الأسماء سواء كانت مفرد او جمع.

✓ You **should** always **wash** your hands after you've touched the cat.
✓ Tourists **should wear** sun cream when it's very hot.
✓ You **shouldn't walk** too much in the sun.
✓ You **shouldn't touch** that. It's dirty!
✓ In summer, tourists **should** wear a hat and **ought not to** sit in the sun.

- يتكون السؤال بهل كالآتي: (و يكون معناه " هل يجب ...؟)

Should + فاعل + مصدر +........تكملة الجملة...?

✓ **Should** you go to school every day?
☞ Yes, I **should**. ☞ No, I **shouldn't**.

- يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالآتي:

أداة استفهام + should / shouldn't + subject + verb........?

✓ What **should** I try doing?
☞ You **should** definitely try some windsurfing.

- للحظ صيغة المبني للمجهول كالآتي:

مفعول + should / shouldn't + be + P.P ....

✓ You **should** eat a lot of vegetables and fruits as they are healthy. (**active**)
✓ A lot of vegetables and fruits **should be eaten** as they are healthy. (**Passive**)

- هناك بعض المصطلحات الأخرى التي نستخدمها في النصح و التي تحل محل **should** و **shouldn't**

should	shouldn't
You ought to + inf.	You ought **not** to + inf.
If I were you, I would + inf.	If I were you, I would**n't**+ inf.
I advise you to + inf.	I advise you **not** to + inf.
My advice to you is to + inf.	My advice to you is not to + inf.
You had better + inf.	You'd better **not** + inf.
It is better to + inf.	It is better **not** to + inf.
It is advisable for you to + inf.	It is **unadvisable** for you to + inf.
It is desirable for you to + inf.	It is **undesirable** for you to + inf.
It is important for.... to + inf.	It is important for.... **not** to + inf.
It will be a good idea to + inf.	It will be a good idea **not** to + inf.

Modal verbs of regret (blame)

- نستخدم **should (shouldn't) have + P.P** أو **ought to (ought not to) have + P.P** للتعبير عن اللوم أو الندم لفعل أو عدم فعل شيء في الماضي

✓ You **shouldn't have arrived** late for your exam.
✓ I'm sorry! I **ought to have come** on time.
✓ You **shouldn't have wasted** your time.

Obligation & Necessity

الإلـــــزام والضـــــرورة

- نستخدم must / mustn't للتعبير عن (الالزام أو الضرورة أو التحريم).
- بعد must / mustn't يأتي الفعل في المصدر (بدون اي اضافات وبدون **to**).
- تأتى must / mustn't مع جميع الضمائر والأسماء سواء كانت مفرد أو جمع.
- للحظ استخدامات:

must / mustn't + inf.

✓ You **must leave** your bins outside today. (القواعد و القوانين)
✓ I **must work** hard for the exams next week. (إلزام شخصي)
✓ I **must buy** a present for my mother. (مشاعر قوية)
✓ You **must come** to my party tonight. (دعوة قوية)
✓ They **mustn't eat** that cheese. It's green! ☞ You **must stop** smoking. (نصيحة قوية)
✓ We **must buy** souvenirs for our friends here. (تذكرة بفعل شيء)

- يتكون السؤال بهل كالآتي: (و يكون معناه " هل يجب ...؟)

Must + فاعل + مصدر +........ تكملة الجملة...?

✓ **Must** I turn right here?
☞ Yes, you **must**. ☞ No, I **mustn't**.

- يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالآتي:

أداة استفهام + must / mustn't + subject + verb........?

✓ What **must** I do to avoid traffic fines? ☞ You **must** stick to the rules.

- للحظ صيغة المبني للمجهول كالآتي:

مفعول + must / mustn't + be + P.P ....

✓ I **must buy** a present for my mother. (active)
✓ A present for my mother **must be bought**. (Passive)

- يمكننا استبدال **must** بالتعبيرات التالية:

must + مصدر

= It's necessary for ...... to + inf.
= It's a necessity for ...... to + inf.
= It's obligatory for ...... to + inf.
= It's legal for ...... to + inf.
= It's a must for ...... to + inf.

✓ **You must** turn right.
✓ **It is necessary for you to** turn right.
✓ **It is obligatory for you to** turn right.
✓ **It is a necessity for you to** turn right.
✓ **It is a must for you to** turn right.

- للحظ الفرق بين **must** و **a must**:

✓ You **must** turn right. (فعل مساعد بمعني يجب و يأتي بعده المصدر)
✓ It is **a must** for you to turn right. (اسم بمعني ضرورة)

- للحظ الفرق بين **necessary** و**a necessity**:

✓ You **must** turn right. (فعل مساعد بمعني يجب و يأتي بعده المصدر)
✓ It is **a must** for you to turn right. (اسم بمعني ضرورة)

يمكننا استبدال **mustn't** بالتعبيرات التالية:

mustn't + مصدر

- = It's not allowed to + inf. ليس مسموحاً أن
- = It's not permitted to + inf. ليس مسموحاً أن
- = It's forbidden to + inf. (from +ing) محرم
- = It's prohibited to + inf. (from +ing)
- = It's banned to + inf. (from +ing)
- = It's against the law. ضد القانون أن
- = It's illegal to + inf. غير قانوني أن

✓ **You mustn't** park your car here.
☞ **It is against the law to** park your car here.
✓ **It is not allowed to** park your car here.
☞ **It is not permitted to** park your car here.
✓ **It is forbidden to** park your car here.
☞ **It is banned to** park your car here.
✓ **It is prohibited to** park your car here.
☞ **It is illegal to** park your car here.

يمكننا أيضا استخدام **mustn't** للتعبير عن نصيحة قوية / الالتزام الشخصي

✓ You **mustn't** waste your time.
✓ I **mustn't** leave my bedroom untidy.

يمكننا أيضا استخدام **can't** للتعبير عن عدم السماح بالقيام بشيء ما

✓ You **can't** smoke in hospitals.

have to - has to - need

(have to / has to / need (to))

نستخدم **have to / has to / need (to)** لتعبير عن إلزام مفروض علينا .

بعد **have to / has to / need (to)** يأتي الفعل في المصدر (بدون اي اضافات).

تأتي **has to / needs (to)** مع المفرد و **he - she - it**

تأتي **have to / need (to)** مع الجمع و **we - they - I - you**

✓ We **have to** go to school on time.
✓ We **need to** go to school on time.
✓ She **has to** get a passport to travel to London.

في حالة النفي نستخدم

don't have to / doesn't have to + inf.
don't need to / doesn't need to / needn't + inf.

✓ She **doesn't have to** hurry, she isn't late for school.
✓ They **don't have to** buy bread; there is much in the fridge.

يتكون السؤال بهل كالآتي : (و يكون معناه " هل يجب ...؟)

Do / Does + فاعل + have to / need (to) + inf. ...?

✓ **Do** you **have to** hurry?
☞ Yes, we **do**.
☞ No, we **don't**.

يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالآتي:

أداة استفهام + do / does + فاعل + have to / need (to) + inf. ?

✓ What **does** he **have to** do to avoid traffic fines?
☞ he **has to** stick to the rules.

للحظ صيغة المبني للمجهول كالآتي:

مفعول + have to / has to / need (to) + be + P.P ....

✓ I **have to buy** a present for my friend. (active)
✓ A present for my friend **has to be bought**. (Passive)

للتعبير عن الضرورة في الماضي نستخدم

had to + inf.

✓ I couldn't go out because I **had to** do my homework.

✓ We **had to** do computer studies when we were at prep school.

في حالة النفي نستخدم

didn't have to + inf.

✓ She **didn't have to** hurry, she wasn't late for school.

✓ We **didn't have to** do computer studies when we were at primary school.

للحظ أن:

had to + مصدر = It was necessary (for + فاعل / ضمير مفعول) to + مصدر

✓ I **had to** do my homework, so I couldn't go out.
= **It was necessary for me** to do my homework.

✓ She **didn't have to** go shopping.
= **It wasn't necessary for her** to go shopping.

لاحـــظ

❶ تعبر **didn't have to** عن أن الشيء كان غير ضروري لذلك لم يفعله الشخص

أما **needn't have + p.p** تعبر عن أن الشخص فعل الشيء على الرغم انه كان غير ضروري

✓ He **didn't have to get** up early.	(so he didn't get up early)
✓ He **needn't have got** up early.	(but he got up early)

❷ كلمة **a must** اسم بمعني ضرورة :

✓ Getting a driving licence is **a must** to drive a car.

❸ لا نستخدم **to** بعد كلمة **needn't** يأتي بعدها المصدر بدون **to** :

✓ We **needn't** go to the club.

❹ نستخدم التركيب **be to** بمعني يجب للتعبير عن الضرورة (am - is - are + to + inf.)

✓ Nadia **is to** admit that she did not know.

لاحظ الاختلاف بين **must - have to - need**

تستخدم **must + inf.** للتعبير عن إلزام شخصي المشاعر القوية والأمنيات وعمل الدعوات والنصيحة القوية وتذكر أنفسنا بشيء.

✓ I **must work** hard for the exams next week.	(إلزام شخصي)
✓ I **must buy** a present for my mother.	(مشاعر قوية)
✓ You **must come** to my party tonight.	(دعوة قوية)
✓ You **must stop smoking**.	(نصيحة قوية)

تستخدم **have to / has to + infinitive** مع القواعد أو عندما لا تمتلك اختيار لفعل شيء ما (مضطر إلى).

✓ We **have to go** to school every day.

✓ My father **doesn't have to** work today because it is a holiday.

✓ She **doesn't have to** get up early. It's a holiday.

تستخدم **need (to) + inf.** للتعبير عن الحاجة إلى شيء معين ونفيها **don't need to / needn't + inf.**:

✓ Hassan **needs to** go to the bank after he finishes work.

✓ I **don't need to buy** / **needn't buy** a new pen. I've already got one.

الاستنتاج Modal verbs of deduction

Key words Degree	Present Deduction استنتاج في المضارع	Past Deduction استنتاج في الماضي
- I'm sure - I'm certain - I think - I believe - Certainly - I suppose - Impossible	**must + inf.** استنتاج مؤكد في المضارع	**must have + p.p.**استنتاج مؤكد في الماضي
	▶ It is made of gold; it **must** cost a lot of money.	▶ The floor was full of water; Toka **must have forgotten** to close the tap.
	can't + inf. استنتاج مستبعد في المضارع	**can't have + p.p**استنتاج مستبعد في الماضي
	▶ It is made of plastic; it **can't** cost a lot of money.	▶ The floor was full of water; Toka **can't have closed** the tap.
- I'm not sure - I'm not certain - perhaps - It is probable - It is possible	**might (may - could) + inf.** استنتاج محتمل في المضارع	**might (may - could) have + p.p.** استنتاج محتمل في الماضي
	▶ I think. Mr. Ahmed **might be** famous in the future.	▶ I didn't see Jana at school today. She **might have been** absent.

لاحـظ

❶ يمكننا عمل استنتاج في الاستمرار في المضارع ونستخدم

(must - can't - might - may) + be+ v + ing

✓ Where is Jana? -I'm not sure. She **may be studying.**

❷ يمكننا عمل استنتاج في الاستمرار في الماضي ونستخدم

(must - can't - might - may) have + been + v + ing

✓ I'm sure that Al Daifi was busy. He **must have been preparing** Giants' Revision.

❸ يمكننا عمل استنتاج مستبعد في الماضي ونستخدم **couldn't have+ P.P** ولكن لا يمكننا استخدام **mustn't**

✓ Mr Ahmed couldn't have been lazy as he worked hard.

✓

Wise Saying

Never apologize for having high standards. People who really want to be in your life will rise up to meet them

لا تعتذر أبداً عن تميُّزك عمن حولك . إن من يريدون حقاً أن يكونوا في حياتك سيرتفعون ليلتقوا بك

1 Elementary Exercises

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

① We .... wash these tomatoes. They've already been washed.
ⓐ must ⓑ doesn't have to ⓒ needn't ⓓ mustn't

② Ali can't come out with us this evening. He .... work late.
ⓐ have to ⓑ had to ⓒ has to ⓓ mustn't

③ Sief .... to work on Saturdays.
ⓐ don't have ⓑ doesn't have ⓒ hasn't ⓓ mustn't

④ You mustn't smoke in sleeping rooms. This is a ....
ⓐ prohibition ⓑ necessity ⓒ apology ⓓ suggestion

⑤ She owns a wonderful car. She .... poor.
ⓐ might be ⓑ can't be ⓒ must be ⓓ must have been

⑥ He .... ill. He eats like a horse.
ⓐ must be ⓑ can't be ⓒ won't be ⓓ must have been

⑦ Nader .... the school bus. He came to school late.
ⓐ must have missed ⓑ can't have missed ⓒ can miss ⓓ can't miss

⑧ There .... have been a sandstorm. The streets are covered in sand.
ⓐ must ⓑ can't ⓒ might ⓓ may

⑨ Mark is a really nice person. You .... meet him.
ⓐ have to ⓑ mustn't ⓒ has to ⓓ must

⑩ I .... work from 8.30 to 5.30 every day.
ⓐ have to ⓑ had to ⓒ has to ⓓ must

⑪ My son's watch .... have cost me a fortune. It's made of plastic.
ⓐ can't ⓑ must ⓒ might ⓓ mustn't

⑫ We didn't have much time yesterday so we .... hurry.
ⓐ have to ⓑ had to ⓒ has to ⓓ must

⑬ I had toothache last night. I............ see my dentist.
ⓐ must ⓑ should ⓒ had to ⓓ have to

⑭ He............ go to school yesterday. It was a holiday.
ⓐ needn't ⓑ won't ⓒ didn't have to ⓓ may not

⑮ You .... finish it today. It is your choice.
ⓐ have to ⓑ must ⓒ had to ⓓ don't have to

Fill in gap:

⑯ Oh no, I don't have my keys! I........... have left them in the taxi.
⑰ Ali........... be happy. His girlfriend just agreed to marry him.
⑱ You .... smoke outside. Smoking is not allowed inside the building.
⑲ John .... buy some new shoes for last night's party.
⑳ I .... wear glasses because I can't see so clearly.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

㉑ Do you have a minute? I needn't talk to you about something. [..............................]
㉒ My school is not far. I need take a taxi. [..............................]
㉓ That's the second new car they have bought this year. They can't be very rich!
[..............................]
㉔ What do I had to do to get a new driving licence? [..............................]
㉕ You needn't park here. It says "No Parking." [..............................]

2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Everything will be OK. You .... worry.
ⓐ must ⓑ have to ⓒ needn't ⓓ doesn't have to

2 He .... to get up early, so he didn't.
ⓐ didn't need ⓑ needn't ⓒ mustn't ⓓ must

3 Ahmed can stay here. He............ come with us.
ⓐ needn't ⓑ have to ⓒ must ⓓ has to

4 Don't tell anybody what I said. You .... keep it a secret.
ⓐ has to ⓑ don't have to ⓒ mustn't ⓓ must

5 We've got plenty of time. We............ hurry.
ⓐ needn't ⓑ have to ⓒ doesn't have to ⓓ has to

6 I have to talk to Ali. I .... forget to call him.
ⓐ doesn't have to ⓑ mustn't ⓒ need to ⓓ must

7 Last week, Toka broke her arm and .... go to hospital.
ⓐ have to ⓑ had to ⓒ has to ⓓ must

8 I .... to wear glasses for reading.
ⓐ have ⓑ has ⓒ must ⓓ needn't

9 You .... park your car here until you pay for it.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ must ⓒ can't ⓓ must be

10 When .... Mona have to go after I had left?
ⓐ did ⓑ doing ⓒ does ⓓ do

11 The driver .... take a side road.
ⓐ are to ⓑ need ⓒ is to ⓓ have to

12 Hani .... wear a suit to work, but he usually does.
ⓐ need to ⓑ have to ⓒ doesn't have to ⓓ must

13 You've been travelling all day. You .... be tired.
ⓐ must ⓑ can't ⓒ mustn't ⓓ might

14 I often see that woman walking along this street. She .... live near here.
ⓐ must ⓑ can't ⓒ should ⓓ will

15 I know that he has two children, he .... single.
ⓐ may be ⓑ must be ⓒ can't be ⓓ will be

Fill in gap:

16 At my sports club, everyone .... wear flat shoes. It's an important rule.
17 That woman drives a very expensive car. She .... have a lot of money.
18 Oh, the phone is ringing. Answer it. It...........be Toka. She always rings at this time.
19 Go and look in the kitchen for your gloves. They .... be in there.
20 Do you know where Ali is? He .... be out - his car keys are on the table.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 They had to be at school by eight o'clock every day. [.............................]
22 It can't have rained a lot in the night. There are puddles everywhere. [.............................]
23 To get promoted, you needn't improve your computer skills. [.............................]
24 You must run next to the swimming pool. You might fall over. [.............................]
25 You needn't to mention this to your mother. [.............................]

3 Intermediate Exercises

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Nada .... get very bored in her job. She does the same thing every day.
ⓐ must ⓑ can't ⓒ mustn't ⓓ might

2 Ahmed is a professor of chemistry. He .... very clever.
ⓐ must have ⓑ must be ⓒ can't have ⓓ couldn't have

3 I haven't .... go to the doctor for ages.
ⓐ have to ⓑ had to ⓒ has to ⓓ must

4 Can I talk to you, please? Sorry, I............go now. I'm late.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ has to ⓒ need ⓓ must

5 My son is ill so I ....stay at home.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ has to ⓒ have to ⓓ may

6 I'm not working tomorrow, so I .... get up early.
ⓐ don't have to ⓑ doesn't have to ⓒ must ⓓ have to

7 That restaurant .... be very good. It's always full of people.
ⓐ can ⓑ can't ⓒ mustn't ⓓ must

8 I don't want anyone to know about our plan. You .... tell anyone.
ⓐ have to ⓑ must ⓒ mustn't ⓓ doesn't have to

9 It's strange story, but it .... true.
ⓐ must be ⓑ can't be ⓒ could be ⓓ can be

10 I promised I would be on time. I .... be late.
ⓐ have to ⓑ must ⓒ mustn't ⓓ don't have to

11 Applications for the job .... be received by 18 May.
ⓐ have to ⓑ needn't to ⓒ has to ⓓ must

12 We haven't got much time. We .... hurry.
ⓐ needn't ⓑ don't have to ⓒ must ⓓ has to

13 They can't fix my computer, so I .... to buy a new one.
ⓐ must ⓑ has ⓒ will have ⓓ had

14 Sarah hasn't contacted me. She .... my message.
ⓐ can't have got ⓑ can have got ⓒ must have got ⓓ can't get

15 Why did he get up early? He.....got up so early. He could have stayed in bed longer.
ⓐ have to have ⓑ must have ⓒ needn't have ⓓ needn't

Fill in gap:

16 My sister made a cake. You .... try it. It's lovely!
17 Jana always does really well on exams. She .... study a lot.
18 We really .... unite in such a difficult situation.
19 At her first school, she .... to wear a blue uniform.
20 Come and see me tomorrow. You .... come and see me tomorrow.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 You must leave medicines where children can find them. [..............................]
22 If you haven't eaten all day, you can't be hungry. [..............................]
23 Huda has a huge library in her house. She mustn't love books. [..............................]
24 Does he has to use this card? [..............................]
25 All my plants can't been dead! I forgot to water them before I went on holiday. [..............................]

4 Advanced Exercises

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I can manage the shopping alone. You .... go with me.
ⓐ must ⓑ doesn't have to ⓒ need ⓓ don't have to

2 I must finish all my work today or I .... work tomorrow.
ⓐ have to ⓑ had to ⓒ has to ⓓ must

3 A: We used to live very near the motorway. B: Did you? It .... noisy.
ⓐ can't be ⓑ can't have been ⓒ must be ⓓ must have been

4 A: Joe is a hard worker. B: Joe? You............ be joking. He doesn't do anything.
ⓐ must ⓑ can't ⓒ mustn't ⓓ might

5 I can't find my phone anywhere. I .... it at work.
ⓐ might leave ⓑ can't have left ⓒ must have left ⓓ might have left

6 His bad exam results............ have frustrated his poor parents.
ⓐ must ⓑ should ⓒ can't ⓓ needn't

7 I am broke. I............ have been more careful about money.
ⓐ must ⓑ may ⓒ might ⓓ should

8 You must .... difficulty driving to Cairo yesterday. The weather was so bad.
ⓐ have ⓑ have had ⓒ had ⓓ have been

9 I'm sure what he said was correct. He .... mistaken.
ⓐ can't have been ⓑ may be ⓒ must be ⓓ can't be

10 You ...... take photos here. It's forbidden.
ⓐ shouldn't ⓑ mustn't ⓒ must ⓓ should

11 On travelling abroad, you always............ carry your passport.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ need ⓒ ought not to ⓓ have to

12 He .... put his jacket on the floor . Now it's dirty.
ⓐ ought to ⓑ mightn't have ⓒ mustn't have ⓓ shouldn't have

13 You .... have lunch with us , it's the first time you are visiting us.
ⓐ can ⓑ should ⓒ must ⓓ have to

14 You .... have called me when you arrived. I wish that you had called me
ⓐ might ⓑ must ⓒ should ⓓ will

15 You .... be here on time every day. Our boss is an unforgivable person.
ⓐ don't have to ⓑ mustn't ⓒ have to ⓓ needn't

Fill in gap:

16 He was very busy. I .... make an appointment to see him.
17 You........... practise a lot before you gave your speech. It was really good.
18 Your mother........be a great cook. You are always so keen to get back home to eat!
19 Old houses .... to be demolished to build new houses.
20 I really .... phone my parents to tell them I'm going to be late home today.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

21 There are no buses, so we needn't walk. [..............................]
22 Food products which are out of date must be eaten. [..............................]
23 It was raining heavily, so we must take a taxi to get to the office on time. [..............................]
24 It should be cold outside. That man in the street is wearing a coat. [..............................]
25 I regret going, but I didn't have no choice. [..............................]

Exercise 1

General Exercise On Grammar

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... did Suzan leave home?
ⓐ How long ⓑ How long ago ⓒ How much ⓓ How many

2. .... I got home, the children were already asleep.
ⓐ By the time ⓑ Until ⓒ By ⓓ Whenever

3. Hassan apologized .... shouting at me.
ⓐ at ⓑ in ⓒ for ⓓ about

4. He denied .... his mother's vase.
ⓐ to break ⓑ broke ⓒ have broken ⓓ breaking

5. If you .... your room, you can go out to play.
ⓐ have tided ⓑ tided ⓒ had tided ⓓ are tiding

6. Look at the sunshine, it .... a beautiful day.
ⓐ is being ⓑ is going to be ⓒ be ⓓ being

7. She .... hadn't finished the washing up when the guests arrived.
ⓐ yet ⓑ just ⓒ before ⓓ still

8. That's the boy .... father is my teacher.
ⓐ whose ⓑ who's ⓒ who ⓓ that

9. The office .... I work is very large.
ⓐ which ⓑ what ⓒ where ⓓ when

10. They .... for an hour now, so they're tired.
ⓐ exercise ⓑ have been exercising ⓒ are exercising ⓓ were exercising

11. Two months .... a long time to wait for a reply.
ⓐ are ⓑ is ⓒ were ⓓ have been

12. We waved goodbye .... the car was out of sight.
ⓐ while ⓑ when ⓒ until ⓓ by the time

13. They had lots of potatoes, so they .... buy any more.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ couldn't ⓒ wouldn't ⓓ didn't need to

14. .... much, made him irritable.
ⓐ By worrying ⓑ Worrying ⓒ Worry ⓓ Through worrying

15. Adel is .... interesting painter I have ever known.
ⓐ more ⓑ the more ⓒ most ⓓ the most

16. As soon as she saw the girls, she asked them what they ....
ⓐ had been doing ⓑ have been doing ⓒ have done ⓓ are doing

Fill in gap:

17. Ramses Hilton is (a) .... very expensive hotel on the bank of (b) .... River Nile. The hotel is very attractive. Lots of famous people love (c) .... there in order to enjoy the privacy that the hotel offer them it also (d) .... security guards to keep reporters out.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

18. If you don't stop to smoke, you'll make yourself ill. [..............................]

19. Jana would prefer to work as a doctor from work as a nurse. [..............................]

20. Nadia has been studying English since three months. [..............................]

21. He doesn't carry a lot of cash in order that avoid getting robbed. [..............................]

22. Because the traffic I arrived at the office late. [..............................]

Exercise 2

General Exercise On Grammar

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

① "............ you hurry, you will be late for work." "I'm nearly ready now."
ⓐ Supposing ⓑ Providing ⓒ When ⓓ Unless

② "Did you phone Adel yesterday?" "No, I ...., he came round to see me."
ⓐ needn't ⓑ didn't need to ⓒ shouldn't ⓓ mustn't

③ "Do you have pen-friends?" "Yes, and .... of them live abroad."
ⓐ neither ⓑ both ⓒ all ⓓ either

④ "I cut my hair myself." "Really? How brave! I .... by a hairdresser."
ⓐ cut mine ⓑ have mine cut ⓒ am cutting mine ⓓ mine is cut

⑤ "I'm sorry I'm late." "I .... here for over an hour."
ⓐ was waiting ⓑ am waiting ⓒ have waited ⓓ have been waiting

⑥ "Shall I take my coat with me?" "Yes, take it .... it gets cold later."
ⓐ in case ⓑ whereas ⓒ in spite ⓓ however

⑦ "Why didn't you go to the party?" "Because .... of my friends was invited."
ⓐ none ⓑ both ⓒ either ⓓ no

⑧ .... it was raining, he took his umbrella with him.
ⓐ Due to ⓑ Because of ⓒ Since ⓓ Though

⑨ He .... be at work. His car isn't outside his house.
ⓐ might ⓑ will ⓒ can't ⓓ must

⑩ I think I .... my hair cut next Saturday.
ⓐ have ⓑ have had ⓒ will have ⓓ had

⑪ It's no use .... the door. It's locked.
ⓐ pushing ⓑ push ⓒ to push ⓓ to pushing

⑫ She prefers .... trousers to skirts.
ⓐ wearing ⓑ wear ⓒ to wear ⓓ to wearing

⑬ The match .... at two o'clock tomorrow afternoon.
ⓐ starts ⓑ start ⓒ is starting ⓓ starting

⑭ We .... phone Mary. It's her birthday today.
ⓐ needn't ⓑ don't have to ⓒ ought to ⓓ are able to

⑮ As he is a policeman, he is .... to keeping away all night.
ⓐ used ⓑ been used ⓒ use ⓓ using

⑯ Everyone seems to know Adel Imam, ...?
ⓐ don't they ⓑ didn't they ⓒ doesn't they ⓓ does they

Fill in gap:

⑰ Egypt is a country in (a) .... north east of Africa. Cairo is the capital of Egypt. Many crops (b) .... planted in Egypt. It aspires to export the harvest to foreign countries. Egypt has many tourist destinations. It hopes (c) .... increase the number of tourists. If tourists are well treated, they (d) .... surely come again.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

⑱ Neither John nor Tom doesn't like staying up late. [..............................]
⑲ She isn't used to live in tropical climates. [..............................]
⑳ The drowning child was risking by the life guard yesterday. [..............................]
㉑ The supermarket has thirty employees, most of which work part time. [..............................]
㉒ Thick fog prevented the plane of taking off. [..............................]
㉓ use the traffic I arrived at the office late. [..............................]

GIANTS

Exercise 3

General Exercise On Grammar

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 "Did you find your degree course difficult?" "Yes, but I............ to it."
ⓐ got used ⓑ used ⓒ was used ⓓ am used

2 "Did you read both of those books?" "Yes, but I didn't enjoy .... of them."
ⓐ neither ⓑ both ⓒ all ⓓ either

3 "I feel very tired today." "You .... have stayed up so late last night."
ⓐ could ⓑ might ⓒ shouldn't ⓓ won't

4 "I love going to the beach." "............".
ⓐ So do I ⓑ So I do ⓒ Neither do I ⓓ Nor I do.

5 "This cake tastes very sweet." "I think I put .... sugar in it."
ⓐ too many ⓑ too much ⓒ a lot ⓓ a great deal

6 "Why are you so tired?" "Because I .... to getting up early in the morning."
ⓐ am used ⓑ am not used ⓒ didn't use ⓓ used

7 .... I take your order now, madam?
ⓐ May ⓑ Should ⓒ Must ⓓ Ought

8 .... the heavy snow, we managed to get to the office.
ⓐ In spite of ⓑ While ⓒ However ⓓ Whereas

9 Mai .... all her money by the time the shops closed.
ⓐ had spent ⓑ was spending ⓒ spent ⓓ has spent

10 He acts .... he were my friend, but he isn't.
ⓐ as though ⓑ though ⓒ as ⓓ like

11 If you .... in such a hurry, you wouldn't have forgotten the file.
ⓐ hadn't left ⓑ had left ⓒ have left ⓓ having left

12 John fell .... his bicycle and hurt his knees.
ⓐ down ⓑ around ⓒ about ⓓ off

13 No reporters .... to approach the scene of the accident.
ⓐ allowed ⓑ were allowed ⓒ needn't ⓓ didn't have

14 The girl .... at that desk is my best friend.
ⓐ sits ⓑ to sit ⓒ sat ⓓ sitting

15 The sea is .... in this area.
ⓐ quite a clean ⓑ quite clean ⓒ clean quite ⓓ a quite clean

16 We expect everyone .... to the meeting.
ⓐ to come ⓑ come ⓒ to coming ⓓ coming

Fill in gap:

17 Healthy food should include vitamins and proteins. It has to (a) .... fresh and low in fat and salt. It shouldn't contain harmful chemical additives. If we (b) .... not eat the right food, we (c) .... get ill and lose our ability (d) .... do our work well.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

18 Don't tease him anymore. He doesn't enjoy to be laughed at. [..............................]
19 He didn't work hard for he lost his work. [..............................]
20 His mother is French even though his father is English. [..............................]
21 I prefer reading a book than watching T.V. [..............................]
22 My uncle has a large collection of antiques, many of whom are valuable. [.......................]

Exercise 4

General Exercise On Grammar

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You will do as I tell you .... ?
ⓐ won't you ⓑ do you ⓒ wouldn't you ⓓ don't you

2 You can tell from her mouth and eyes that she .... her mother.
ⓐ takes after ⓑ takes down ⓒ takes from ⓓ takes off

3 You look tired these days. You .... to bed earlier.
ⓐ will go ⓑ should go ⓒ ought to ⓓ shouldn't go

4 Yesterday they left .... France where they are going to spend their holiday.
ⓐ from ⓑ to ⓒ for ⓓ in

5 Why do you always avoid ....him?
ⓐ meeting ⓑ to meet ⓒ meet ⓓ in meeting

6 Who was she given the ring ....?
ⓐ by ⓑ for ⓒ from ⓓ of

7 When you have finished typing the report, it .... by another secretary.
ⓐ will check ⓑ checked ⓒ will be checked ⓓ has checked

8 When I saw Nelly she looked .... she had been ill.
ⓐ such as ⓑ so ⓒ the same ⓓ as if

9 We hope that .... us when you come to our country.
ⓐ you visited ⓑ you would visit ⓒ you'll visit ⓓ you're visiting

10 We had .... cold weather that we had to stay at home.
ⓐ rather ⓑ such ⓒ so ⓓ such a

11 Those boys, are the ones .... he has long observed.
ⓐ where ⓑ whom ⓒ which ⓓ what

12 There is .... milk in the fridge.
ⓐ any ⓑ no ⓒ a lot ⓓ not

13 The problem has been getting worse .... a long time.
ⓐ for ⓑ since ⓒ during ⓓ in

14 The fire caused a lot of .... damage.
ⓐ a ⓑ the ⓒ some ⓓ no article

15 The English yard is .... the metre.
ⓐ smaller than ⓑ bigger than ⓒ the same as ⓓ the same than

16 That teacher always .... me laugh.
ⓐ do ⓑ make ⓒ does ⓓ makes

Fill in gap:

17 A dictionary is very important for (a) .... learners of English. It gives (b) .... different meanings of a word. Most dictionaries help them to pronounce a word correctly (c) .... using pronunciation symbols and syllables. Moreover, it shows the learner (d) .... to use the word by giving them examples in sentences.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

18 He found it difficult enough to do the crossword. [..............................]
19 I don't feel well but I'll carry out working any way. [..............................]
20 I'm happy at the job I've got. [..............................]
21 I've never seen so boring film. [..............................]
22 My brother has a difficult decision to do next week. [..............................]

Exercise 5

General Exercise On Grammar

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 "Have you found your keys yet?" "No, I've looked .... but I can't find them."
ⓐ everywhere ⓑ everything ⓒ everybody ⓓ anywhere

2 "Shall we go shopping?" "I can't go until the babysitter ....".
ⓐ will arrive ⓑ arrives ⓒ arrived ⓓ is arriving

3 "Where's Ashraf?" "I'm not sure. He .... be in the study."
ⓐ might ⓑ will ⓒ ought ⓓ shall

4 .... is that letter I wrote? Have you seen it?
ⓐ Which ⓑ When ⓒ What ⓓ Where

5 .... the bank is closed, what will we do?
ⓐ Unless ⓑ Though ⓒ Supposing ⓓ Providing

6 She was lying on the sofa .... about the exam.
ⓐ think ⓑ to think ⓒ to thinking ⓓ thinking

7 They were happy to hear they .... a prize.
ⓐ had won ⓑ were winning ⓒ have won ⓓ win

8 We .... get up early this morning, so we slept until ten o'clock.
ⓐ needn't ⓑ didn't need to ⓒ mustn't ⓓ couldn't

9 We .... the lock fixed before we went on holiday.
ⓐ have had ⓑ are having ⓒ had had ⓓ will be having

10 .... amount of money can buy happiness.
ⓐ No ⓑ Never ⓒ None ⓓ Not

11 .... her opinion, he was thoroughly unfit for the job.
ⓐ In ⓑ To ⓒ With ⓓ For

12 Because he was worried about his health, he decided to .... smoking.
ⓐ cut out ⓑ break down ⓒ cut down ⓓ knock down

13 Do you know .... was responsible for the damage?
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ whom ⓓ whose

14 Do you often dine with the girls at the restaurant? No, I ....
ⓐ scarcely ever ⓑ scarcely never ⓒ scarcely seldom ⓓ scarcely not

15 Each of us .... been carrying an umbrella.
ⓐ was ⓑ love ⓒ were ⓓ has

16 Have you any objection .... him to lunch?
ⓐ being asked ⓑ to asking ⓒ to ask ⓓ asking

Fill in gap:

17 My father is a great man. He (a) .... a good student and now he (b) .... worked for the same company (c) .... 20 years ago. He is (d) .... to retire next year.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

18 Aya used to be the happier than she is now. [..............................]
19 He can't stand treated like a slave. [..............................]
20 I not only enjoy my job and it's very well paid. [..............................]
21 I'm sure he is going to understand if you explain it to him clearly. [..............................]
22 We were living in the same house for twelve years before we decided to move.
[..............................]

Exercise 6

General Exercise On Grammar

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You needn't .... the book back until Monday.
ⓐ be brought ⓑ brought ⓒ to bring ⓓ bring

2 Wouldn't you rather we .... shopping today? I'm very tired.
ⓐ don't do ⓑ didn't go ⓒ wouldn't go ⓓ won't go

3 Will you please let .... ? I'll tell you why later.
ⓐ me to speak ⓑ that I speak ⓒ me speak ⓓ me speaking

4 Why .... watch a film on TV?
ⓐ do we ⓑ aren't we ⓒ shall we ⓓ don't we

5 'Where are you going so fast?' 'Sorry, I .... hurry.'
ⓐ am in a ⓑ have a ⓒ am in ⓓ have

6 When I was five, I .... swim quite well.
ⓐ could ⓑ can ⓒ shall ⓓ let

7 This is the girl .... was very ill last month.
ⓐ which ⓑ whom ⓒ whose ⓓ who

8 They won't believe me .... I swear it's true.
ⓐ whatever ⓑ even if ⓒ in spite of ⓓ however

9 The tennis court was .... wet for us to play on.
ⓐ very ⓑ too ⓒ enough ⓓ so

10 The more he eats .... he gets.
ⓐ the fatter ⓑ fatter ⓒ fattest ⓓ faster

11 The cook did nothing but .... about the food.
ⓐ to complain ⓑ complain ⓒ complaining ⓓ he'd complained

12 That was very kind ... you. Thank you very much.
ⓐ from ⓑ of ⓒ did ⓓ on

13 She was .... angry to argue with her boyfriend.
ⓐ too ⓑ quite ⓒ so ⓓ very

14 .... day, I will buy a big house with a garden.
ⓐ A ⓑ The ⓒ That ⓓ One

15 .... you leave now, you won't miss the start of the film.
ⓐ Supposing ⓑ Unless ⓒ Providing ⓓ Would

16 If I feel better tonight, I .... to the party.
ⓐ would go ⓑ go ⓒ went ⓓ may go

Fill in gap:

17 No one can deny that the computer is one of the modern wonders of the world. It plays (a) .... important part in technology because it's more accurate and faster (b) .... human beings. It is used in (c) .... fields. It can be used in banks to control cashing and bank accounts. In addition, the computer is ideal for (d) .... our everyday needs.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

18 I have cut my hair last week. [..............................]
19 Neither Nadia of Fadia knows how to drive. [..............................]
20 She took off her coat by the time she entered the house. [..............................]
21 The bus to Alexandria departs for an hour. [..............................]
22 This holiday was different of all the others. [..............................]

General Exercise On Grammar

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 "Did you enjoy your holiday?" "Yes, but I'm glad .... home again."
ⓐ being ⓑ to be ⓒ be ⓓ have been

2 "Have you got any brothers?" "I've got two. .... of them are older than me."
ⓐ Either ⓑ Both ⓒ All ⓓ None

3 "I've just passed my driving test." "Congratulations. I wish I .... a car."
ⓐ will drive ⓑ can drive ⓒ drive ⓓ could drive

4 .... I you, I would look for a new job.
ⓐ Would ⓑ Were ⓒ Should ⓓ Had

5 .... sugar shall I add to the cake mixture?
ⓐ How often ⓑ How much ⓒ How many ⓓ How heavy

6 Do you know .... she had been working there before she retired?.
ⓐ when ⓑ how long ⓒ how long ago ⓓ what time

7 Janet had trouble with her job at first." "Yes, she .... to working on her own."
ⓐ used ⓑ get used ⓒ was used ⓓ wasn't used

8 The reason .... he is happy is that e has just passed his exams.
ⓐ where ⓑ when ⓒ that ⓓ why

9 Who .... in my desk? Things have been moved.
ⓐ look ⓑ looks ⓒ looking ⓓ has been looking

10 .... had he put down the receiver.
ⓐ Only ⓑ Just ⓒ Hardly ⓓ Yet

11 .... he to look for us, he would not be able to find us.
ⓐ Could ⓑ Were ⓒ Should ⓓ Might

12 According to the weather .... they still expect a rise in temperature.
ⓐ forecast ⓑ future ⓒ expectancy ⓓ experience

13 Ayman will be ready in a minute. He .... a bath.
ⓐ is having ⓑ had ⓒ could have ⓓ would have had

14 Give her the telescope number .... she gets lost.
ⓐ unless ⓑ perhaps ⓒ in case ⓓ whether

15 He gave me two oranges but .... were bad.
ⓐ all ⓑ both ⓒ some ⓓ either

16 He is .... deaf to hear what we say.
ⓐ too ⓑ so ⓒ very ⓓ enough

Fill in gap:

17 The heart is the most vital organ in the human body. If it stops, death (a) .... surely follow. Some of (b) .... bad habits we get into, can affect our hearts badly. Smoking for example, increases the risk of having a heart attack. Many people (c) .... stopped smoking recently because they want to avoid (d) .... heart diseases.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

18 A cure for the disease hoped efficient. [.............................]
19 Eating too much chocolate makes me feeling sick. [.............................]
20 He can't lying when he told us the news. [.............................]
21 He left his job because he was dissatisfied for months. [.............................]
22 If I will have enough money, I'll buy you a new bicycle. [.............................]

Exercise 8

General Exercise On Grammar

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You broke the window, ... ?
ⓐ did you ⓑ didn't you ⓒ have you ⓓ haven't you

2 You can try being a guitarist as soon as you........... .
ⓐ will qualify ⓑ qualify ⓒ will be qualified ⓓ may qualify

3 Yes, ... answered that was very clever.
ⓐ whatever ⓑ whoever ⓒ whomever ⓓ whosever

4 Would you mind .... up. I can't hear.
ⓐ to talk ⓑ to say ⓒ speaking ⓓ shouting

5 What, you want dinner? I didn't know you .... hungry!
ⓐ was so ⓑ were so ⓒ will be such ⓓ were such

6 What would you do if you .... Prime Minister?
ⓐ was ⓑ were ⓒ be ⓓ would be

7 We saw a new play at the theatre, ... we had supper at a restaurant.
ⓐ after which ⓑ then which ⓒ which after ⓓ and that after

8 We had arranged to meet for lunch but he didn't turn ....
ⓐ up ⓑ on ⓒ in ⓓ over

9 We didn't have ....time for lunch.
ⓐ a lot ⓑ many ⓒ lots ⓓ much

10 They .... to the theatre in time for the matinee.
ⓐ arrived ⓑ reached ⓒ got ⓓ left

11 There........... news tonight.
ⓐ aren't any ⓑ isn't much ⓒ aren't many ⓓ hasn't many

12 The vegetables? .... come from our own garden.
ⓐ Them all ⓑ They all ⓒ All of they ⓓ All they

13 That's the girl .... father has a grocery shop
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ whose ⓓ whom

14 That opera singer .... sung better in his life.
ⓐ never has ⓑ has never ⓒ have never ⓓ never have

15 She asked .... sit down.
ⓐ he to ⓑ him to ⓒ him ⓓ he

16 Our civilization is in decadence, ... all the modern changes.
ⓐ even though ⓑ nevertheless ⓒ however ⓓ in spite of

Fill in gap:

17 Ahmed has learnt to play the piano since he was ten. He participated in many school concerts (a) .... 2004. No one (b) .... ever played as well as him. His music teacher has always encouraged him. He always wanted (c) .... form a band. May be next year his dream (d) .... come true.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

18 Expensive however the restaurant was, the food tasted terrible. [..............................]
19 I can only help if you say me problem. [..............................]
20 In spite the rain, the game was not off. [..............................]
21 Ahmed is having his house decorating at the moment. [..............................]
22 She was upset because she was waiting to hear from her son for days. [......................]

GIANTS

Exercise 9

General Exercise On Grammar

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It must be somebody with .... idea of the geography of the house.
ⓐ any ⓑ much ⓒ no ⓓ few

2 I intend .... the summer studying.
ⓐ spend ⓑ of spending ⓒ to spend ⓓ I will spend

3 It was .... expensive present that she didn't know what to say!
ⓐ such a ⓑ such an ⓒ so much ⓓ so

4 It looks terrible, ...?
ⓐ isn't in ⓑ isn't here ⓒ does it ⓓ doesn't it

5 If Kate gets tired, she .... to bed.
ⓐ would go ⓑ go ⓒ went ⓓ will go

6 It is raining, ... take your umbrella.
ⓐ so that ⓑ so ⓒ because ⓓ why

7 It .... when I came.
ⓐ was windy ⓑ had a wind ⓒ made a wind ⓓ did wind

8 It .... rain but I doubt it
ⓐ will ⓑ may ⓒ can ⓓ should

9 I shouldn't .... at you yesterday,' Jane said when she apologized to her friend.
ⓐ shout ⓑ to shout ⓒ be shouted ⓓ have shouted

10 I have .... lot of clothes to wash.
ⓐ other ⓑ another ⓒ others ⓓ the others

11 I hate .... a car at night.
ⓐ to drive ⓑ driving ⓒ drive ⓓ the drive

12 'I don't want .... to see me,' said Jim.
ⓐ nobody ⓑ anything ⓒ anybody ⓓ no one

13 I can't help .... that I'll win the pools one day.
ⓐ hope ⓑ hoping ⓒ to expect ⓓ that I hope

14 I can't .... my mind whether to go to Italy or Spain for my holiday.
ⓐ make off ⓑ make up ⓒ make for ⓓ make at

15 I .... my friend in two hours' time
ⓐ meet ⓑ am meeting ⓒ meets ⓓ was meeting

16 I don't like .... to the cinema
ⓐ that I go ⓑ I go ⓒ go ⓓ going

Fill in gap:

17 Energy and water are the artery of life. All living things and machines (a) .... live or work without them. So we mustn't ignore these problems (b) .... we will lead hard life. The Nile is the only source (c) .... water in Egypt. So we must keep it clean and use (d) .... water only when necessary.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

18 He tried to give away smoking twce. [..............................]
19 I was walking down the street while a car stopped beside me. [..............................]
20 I'll leave before he is coming. [..............................]
21 He is keen at photography. [..............................]
22 Ali is not good about playing football. He rather play squash. [..............................]

Exercise 10

General Exercise On Grammar

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He waited for her for two hours but she didn't........... .
ⓐ turn on ⓑ turn out ⓒ turn up ⓓ turn off

2 He wasn't .... to carry the box.
ⓐ so strong ⓑ strong enough ⓒ too strong enough ⓓ such strong

3 He plays football well, but he plays tennis ....
ⓐ very good ⓑ much better ⓒ too well ⓓ best

4 He .... at secondary school for three years now.
ⓐ has been ⓑ is ⓒ had been ⓓ was

5 Everybody in this class .... done very well in the exam.
ⓐ have ⓑ are ⓒ has ⓓ is

6 Each of the .... a lot of money
ⓐ sisters have ⓑ sisters has ⓒ sister has ⓓ sister have

7 Did you remember .... the door last night?' 'Yes, I did remember.'
ⓐ to close ⓑ closing ⓒ of closing ⓓ of close

8 By next week I .... all my exams.
ⓐ have finished ⓑ finished ⓒ will have finished ⓓ had finished

9 A lot of money has been .... the bank.
ⓐ stolen from ⓑ robbed at ⓒ stolen to ⓓ robbed in

10 .... he realized what happened he called the police.
ⓐ Soon ⓑ As soon as ⓒ As soon ⓓ So soon

11 .... have a meal at the new Chinese restaurant?
ⓐ How about ⓑ What about ⓒ Do you want ⓓ Why don't we

12 .... you really want to go, I'll say no more.
ⓐ Besides ⓑ Since ⓒ However ⓓ Therefore

13 .... the housework. Maggie sat down to rest.
ⓐ Doing ⓑ Having done ⓒ Done ⓓ Has done

14 I fell asleep .... I closed my eyes.
ⓐ just ⓑ as soon as ⓒ already ⓓ still

15 I'll take my umbrella .... it rains later today.
ⓐ so that ⓑ in case ⓒ in order to ⓓ due to

16 No information .... to the new staff yet.
ⓐ has given ⓑ has been given ⓒ was given ⓓ was being given

Fill in gap:

17 Yesterday I bought a story from the bookshop. (a) .... story was written by Naguib Mahfouz. I enjoyed it very much that I have (b) .... all the afternoon (c) .... it. It was about the Egyptian Revolution in 1919. I think my friends (d) .... enjoy it as I did.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

18 He worked extremely hard that he got a promotion. [..............................]
19 Despite of her severe disability, she fulfilled her goal in life. [..............................]
20 It thought that most of the society's problems are the result of unemployment. [........]
21 Ali hates to have his mistakes correct. [..............................]
22 Surgeons make operations on people in hospitals. [..............................]

GIANTS العمالقة

Exercise 11

General Exercise On Grammar

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 .... some spare time, Tom went for a walk.
ⓐ Having ⓑ Have ⓒ Has ⓓ To have

2 I remember the time .... I fell and broke my leg.
ⓐ where ⓑ when ⓒ which ⓓ why

3 It's getting .... colder. I think it's going to snow.
ⓐ coldest ⓑ cold and ⓒ colder and ⓓ coldest and

4 The boys avoided .... through the dark forest.
ⓐ to walk ⓑ walking ⓒ walk ⓓ to walking

5 The play had started .... we got to the theatre.
ⓐ while ⓑ until ⓒ just ⓓ by the time

6 We .... go shopping yesterday because we had plenty of food.
ⓐ needn't have ⓑ need to ⓒ didn't need to ⓓ don't need to

7 This time next month. I .... in a new house.
ⓐ will live ⓑ will be living ⓒ am living ⓓ will have lived

8 "Must you leave at once?" No, I ...., I can stay for another half hour if you like.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ needn't ⓒ hadn't ⓓ haven't

9 .... having no talents, the man became a popular TV. personality.
ⓐ In case of ⓑ Although ⓒ Unless ⓓ In spite of

10 Don't make any noise, ... you?
ⓐ will ⓑ do ⓒ won't ⓓ don't

11 Everyone burst out laughing. There was a lot of ....
ⓐ laugh ⓑ laughed ⓒ laughs ⓓ laughter

12 He often turns .... at parties without the invitation.
ⓐ out ⓑ in ⓒ on ⓓ up

13 Her mother made her .... the piano all afternoon.
ⓐ practised ⓑ practise ⓒ playing ⓓ practising

14 I crossed the street to avoid .... to that terrible man.
ⓐ speak ⓑ spoke ⓒ speaking ⓓ to speak

15 He has a car so he .... take a bus.
ⓐ needn't ⓑ wouldn't ⓒ mustn't ⓓ shouldn't

16 He was starring .... at the enemy.
ⓐ hard ⓑ hardly ⓒ hardening ⓓ hardy

Fill in gap:

17 We are (a) .... tomorrow afternoon to Aswan on a holiday. We (b) .... booked (c) .... tickets we need for our journey. We plan (d) .... stay at a good hotel there, but not too expensive.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

18 I can't remember which I last saw a comic film. [..............................]
19 He stood up and walked forward the front door. [..............................]
20 Do you know where he lived in Alexandria before he moved to Cairo? [..............................]
21 Hassan got two of his teeth extracting yesterday. [..............................]
22 Patients must give medicine every morning. [..............................]

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We had ………… started the journey than we got a flat tyre.
ⓐ the moment that ⓑ no sooner ⓒ whenever ⓓ hardly

2 When we lived by the sea; we ………… to swim every morning.
ⓐ were used ⓑ used ⓒ were using ⓓ got used

3 They ………… be friends. They never speak to each other.
ⓐ would ⓑ could ⓒ can't ⓓ mustn't

4 That office block is much ………… than this one.
ⓐ taller ⓑ tall ⓒ tallest ⓓ being tall

5 Hang the picture on the wall ………… the fire place.
ⓐ above ⓑ under ⓒ between ⓓ at

6 ………… ill, Toka didn't go to work yesterday.
ⓐ Feeling ⓑ Feel ⓒ To feel ⓓ To have felt

7 "Where is dad?" "He's in the garden ………… some apples from the tree."
ⓐ pick ⓑ picking ⓒ to pick ⓓ picked

8 ………… on a small salary when one has a large family is not easy.
ⓐ Having living ⓑ Having to live ⓒ To have lived ⓓ To have live

9 After receiving ………… about the accident, the police acted properly.
ⓐ much information ⓑ any information ⓒ few information ⓓ little information

10 He had a good sleep after he ………… a heavy lunch.
ⓐ has ⓑ had ⓒ has had ⓓ had had

11 He has plenty of money. He ………… earn his living.
ⓐ needn't ⓑ mustn't ⓒ shouldn't ⓓ couldn't

12 He heard the news. The news ………… bad.
ⓐ are ⓑ was ⓒ with ⓓ were

13 He won't catch the train if he ………… soon.
ⓐ didn't pack ⓑ won't pack ⓒ wouldn't pack ⓓ does not pack

14 He's bought a very good-looking dog, ………… .
ⓐ doesn't he ⓑ wasn't he ⓒ hasn't he ⓓ is he

15 Here take it. I have ………… finished it.
ⓐ yet ⓑ still ⓒ soon ⓓ already

16 The problem of pollution ………… worse these days.
ⓐ will get ⓑ got ⓒ is getting ⓓ was getting

Fill in gap:

17 We went to Cairo stadium to watch football match a week ago. While we (a) ………… watching the match, it started to rain. During the rain, it was difficult (b) ………… the players to control the ball. No sooner had the referee blown his whistle (c) ………… declare the end of (d) ………… match than the spectators left the stadium.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

18 This energy saving machine is more economical model on the market. [……………………]
19 Until I arrived home, Ali had already left. [……………………]
20 What for spending the day on the beach? [……………………]
21 While she going on a diet, she put on five kilos. [……………………]
22 You must cut off the amount of sugar you consume. [……………………]

General Exercise On Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Aya .... by the time I get home tonight.
ⓐ is leaving ⓑ will have left ⓒ will leave ⓓ will be leaving

2 Jane works very hard .... Kate is lazy.
ⓐ whereas ⓑ despite ⓒ though ⓓ in spite

3 .... you give me a lift to the supermarket please?
ⓐ Ought ⓑ Should ⓒ Would ⓓ Do

4 "Did you watch the film yesterday?" "No, it .... by the time we got home."
ⓐ finished ⓑ has finished ⓒ was finishing ⓓ had finished

5 "............ we miss the bus, what will we do?" "Call a taxi."
ⓐ Supposing ⓑ Providing ⓒ When ⓓ Unless

6 "Are you tired?" "No, I .... to walking long distances."
ⓐ got used ⓑ used ⓒ am used to ⓓ am using

7 Both of those dresses are beautiful. Yes, but I don't think.......of them will fit me.
ⓐ all ⓑ neither ⓒ either ⓓ no

8 "Can I go out tonight, mum?" "I'd rather you .... at home and did your homework."
ⓐ will stay ⓑ stayed ⓒ stay ⓓ had stayed

9 "How long .... Tony?" "Since we were children."
ⓐ did you know ⓑ do you know ⓒ had you known ⓓ have you known

10 "Laila doesn't study enough." "I know. I am afraid she .... her exams.
ⓐ won't pass ⓑ won't be passing ⓒ won't have passed ⓓ isn't passing

11 "Janette has been writing letters all morning." "Yes, she...........six letters so far."
ⓐ wrote ⓑ has been writing ⓒ has written ⓓ was writing

12 "The sun is very bright today." "I know. That's .... I'm wearing sunglasses."
ⓐ where ⓑ when ⓒ why ⓓ which

13 A: "I love reading." B: ....
ⓐ I do so ⓑ so I am ⓒ so I do ⓓ so do I

14 He made her .... the report four times.
ⓐ write ⓑ to write ⓒ wrote ⓓ writing

15 He's very pleased .... his new secretary.
ⓐ at ⓑ with ⓒ on ⓓ by

16 I am very tired because I had hardly .... sleep last night.
ⓐ any ⓑ enough ⓒ some ⓓ much

Fill in gap:

17 Planning your time is very important. I admire those (a) .... are organized and don't put (b) .... till tomorrow what must be done today. Surely, they will achieve better results (c) .... others. Always remember to (d) .... your homework regularly.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

18 Whatever hard he studies, he doesn't get good marks. [..............................]
19 This diet says to be rich in vitamins. [..............................]
20 There was a lot of traffic because a car had broken up in the middle of the road. [......]
21 She was pleased because she gave the job. [..............................]
22 Our team had scored three goals until we got to the match. [..............................]

GIANTS العمالقة

Exercise 14

General Exercise On Grammar

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Could you get me two .... of bread from the bakery?
ⓐ loaves ⓑ packets ⓒ kilos ⓓ pieces

2 This time next month we .... for our holiday.
ⓐ are packing ⓑ will pack ⓒ will have packed ⓓ will be packing

3 "Whose is this earring?" "I don't know. I found it when I .... the house."
ⓐ have cleaned ⓑ had cleaned ⓒ was cleaning ⓓ cleaned

4 "The children must have been hungry" "I know. They ate .... on their plates."
ⓐ everywhere ⓑ everything ⓒ anything ⓓ something

5 .... he realized the truth, he informed the police.
ⓐ As ⓑ No sooner ⓒ As soon as ⓓ Soon

6 Ali is putting on his coat. Laila "If you .... out, please buy me the newspaper.
ⓐ going ⓑ went ⓒ have gone ⓓ are going

7 He has always been a hard worker and still ....
ⓐ has ⓑ was ⓒ is ⓓ has been

8 He'll explain the point again, ...?
ⓐ won't he ⓑ would he ⓒ will he ⓓ wouldn't he

9 I didn't like the man, he made me .... a fool.
ⓐ to feel ⓑ felt ⓒ feel ⓓ feeling

10 I can't resist .... blue.
ⓐ to wear ⓑ wore ⓒ wearing ⓓ to wearing

11 I hate .... money.
ⓐ borrow ⓑ borrowed ⓒ to borrow ⓓ borrowing

12 I was afraid .... mentioning the news to him.
ⓐ to ⓑ in ⓒ of ⓓ at

13 I'm coming in your car, ...?
ⓐ don't I ⓑ aren't I ⓒ shan't I ⓓ isn't I

14 I'm going to .... my dress dry cleaned.
ⓐ make ⓑ take ⓒ have ⓓ do

15 If I had left my house earlier. I should .... the train.
ⓐ have caught ⓑ catch ⓒ caught ⓓ be catching

16 You have never been honest, ... you?
ⓐ are ⓑ do ⓒ have ⓓ weren't

Fill in gap:

17 Hani is my best friend. He (a) .... his business in Italy three months ago. When he returns to Egypt next July, he (b) .... nine months with us. In fact, he has called me several times (c) .... he left the city. So, I must remember (d) .... our friends to meet him when he conies home.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

18 Ali is so short to join the police force. [..............................]
19 She is friendly with the two children whose their mother is the headmaster. [...............]
20 Jana didn't go to the dentist for six years. [..............................]
21 She wasn't too inexperienced to get the job. [..............................]
22 The flat wasn't cleaned yet. [..............................]

Exercise 15

General Exercise On Grammar

Mark قيم نفسك 25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 In the mile race, the winner was Ali.....broke the school record for the distance.
ⓐ who ⓑ whom ⓒ which ⓓ whose

2 It is getting late. You ....
ⓐ had better go ⓑ would rather go ⓒ have better go ⓓ better go

3 It is high time you .... your childish ways.
ⓐ changed ⓑ must change ⓒ have changed ⓓ should change

4 It was not difficult to move into my new house, as I did not have .... furniture.
ⓐ many ⓑ more ⓒ much ⓓ several

5 It wasn't easy to put .... her bad temper.
ⓐ up with ⓑ away with ⓒ on with ⓓ off with

6 John doesn't intend to go to the party, and .... do I.
ⓐ no ⓑ so ⓒ neither ⓓ either

7 Let's go as soon as Ahmed ....
ⓐ is coming ⓑ came ⓒ comes ⓓ will come

8 Maha is three years old. She is .... young to go out alone.
ⓐ too ⓑ so ⓒ very ⓓ enough

9 Mary expects .... the work done when she comes back.
ⓐ to see ⓑ to have seen ⓒ seeing ⓓ to seeing

10 My brother .... smoke a great deal.
ⓐ used to ⓑ is using ⓒ was using ⓓ was used

11 Need he go so soon? Yes, he .... if he wants to get home in time.
ⓐ needs ⓑ must ⓒ may ⓓ would

12 No sooner had the bell rung .... the boys assembled.
ⓐ when ⓑ than ⓒ as ⓓ that

13 On Tuesday we played hockey and .... we played football.
ⓐ on next day ⓑ the next day ⓒ the day next ⓓ that day

14 Our cat and dog are always fighting ....
ⓐ themselves ⓑ each other ⓒ the others ⓓ both

15 Reading .... the lines of her letter, I'm sure Janet is homesick.
ⓐ between ⓑ along ⓒ across ⓓ through

16 My wife prefers playing the piano .... listening to music.
ⓐ to ⓑ than ⓒ from ⓓ rather

Fill in gap:

17 The Suez Canal is one (a) .... the world's most famous canals. In 2015, the canal became 72 kilometers longer after digging the New Suez Canal. This project took just one year. Many more ships (b) .... now use the Suez Canal in (c) .... easy way. The ships will bring about $13 billion dollars of business into Egypt by 2023. Our president opened it (d) .... August 2015.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

18 She is jealous at her well-off sister in law. [..............................]
19 My grandfather died with cancer. [..............................]
20 I'll take some sandwiches in case I'll get hungry. [..............................]
21 I helped him so as he could finish early. [..............................]
22 Dad didn't let me to drive his car. [..............................]

GIANTS
العمالقة

Exercise 16

General Exercise On Grammar

Mark
قيم نفسك
25

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She can't stand .... to music like that.
ⓐ to listen ⓑ listening ⓒ listen ⓓ to be listening

2 She has been in Aswan .... nine years.
ⓐ ago ⓑ from ⓒ for ⓓ since

3 She was ill .... she stayed at home.
ⓐ however ⓑ yet ⓒ nevertheless ⓓ consequently

4 Somebody told me that story, I've forgotten ....?
ⓐ whom ⓑ who ⓒ whose ⓓ which

5 That couldn't be Osama you saw me with last night. I haven't seen him .... ages.
ⓐ for ⓑ since ⓒ from ⓓ during

6 That is the writer .... have been such a success.
ⓐ who her books ⓑ who's books ⓒ whose books ⓓ his books

7 The antiques of Egypt............such a lot of has been written, should never he lost.
ⓐ over which ⓑ about which ⓒ through whom ⓓ of which

8 The bigger the memory is, the .... useful the computer is.
ⓐ more ⓑ most ⓒ much ⓓ many

9 The convict denied .... any knowledge of the stolen money.
ⓐ having ⓑ to have ⓒ had ⓓ of having

10 The examination will end in a few .... time.
ⓐ days' ⓑ dates ⓒ day's ⓓ days

11 The father of many children .... to work hard to earn his living.
ⓐ must ⓑ has ⓒ should ⓓ are

12 The firemen worked very hard to put .... the fire.
ⓐ on ⓑ in ⓒ out ⓓ off

13 The house .... he lives, needs repairing.
ⓐ which ⓑ where ⓒ whose ⓓ who

14 The Mansions have moved. They don't live here ....
ⓐ anymore ⓑ no longer ⓒ still ⓓ yet

15 The longer we do nothing, the .... serious the problem becomes.
ⓐ much ⓑ many ⓒ more ⓓ most

16 The more money you earn, ... the percentage we pay in taxes.
ⓐ the high ⓑ the highest ⓒ the higher ⓓ highest

Fill in gap:

17 Considered to be the birthplace of civilization, Egypt (a) .... a leading role in the Middle East as well (b) .... the Arab World. Within the framework of (c) .... efforts, Egypt managed to put an end to (d) .... troubles in the area.

Find the mistake, then correct it:

18 He said to be a dishonest man. [..............................]
19 How long did you pass your test? [..............................]
20 It is very more expensive to live in London than any other city in Britain. [..............................]
21 Now I wear contact lenses I had tested my eyes every three months. [..............................]
22 Tea was grown in India. [..............................]

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Verbs with no changes أفعال تصريفاتها الثلاثة لا تتغير

Present S	Past simple	P.P.	Meaning	Present S	Past simple	P.P.	Meaning
hurt	hurt	hurt	يجرح	let	let	let	يدع
cost	cost	cost	يتكلف	put	put	put	يضع
cut	cut	cut	يقطع	shut	shut	shut	يغلق
hit	hit	hit	يضرب	set	set	set	تغرب
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast	يذيع	spread	spread	spread	ينشر / ينتشر

Verbs with one change أفعال تصريفها الثانى والثالث لا يختلفان

Present S	Past simple	P.P.	Meaning	Present S	Past simple	P.P.	Meaning
build	built	built	يبنى	say	said	said	يقول
burn	burnt	burnt	يحرق	sell	sold	sold	يبيع
buy	bought	bought	يشترى	send	sent	sent	يرسل
catch	caught	caught	يمسك	seek	sought	sought	يسعى إلى
creep	crept	crept	يزحف	shine	shone	shone	تشرق
dig	dug	dug	يحفر	shoot	shot	shot	ينطلق
feed	fed	fed	يُطعم	sit	sat	sat	يجلس
feel	felt	felt	يشعر	sleep	slept	slept	ينام
fight	fought	fought	يحارب	smell	smelt	smelt	يشم
find	found	found	يجد	spend	spent	spent	يصرف / ينفق
get	got	got	يحصل على	spell	spelt	spelt	يتهجى
grind	ground	ground	يطحن	spill	spilt	spilt	يسكب
have	had	had	يملك	spin	spun	spun	يدور / يغزل
hang	hung	hung	يعلق	spoil	spoiled / spoilt	spoiled / spoilt	يفسد / يتلف
hear	heard	heard	يسمع	split	split	split	ينقسم / ينشطر
hold	held	held	يمسك	stand	stood	stood	يقف
keep	kept	kept	يحفظ	stick	stuck	stuck	يلصق
kneel	knelt	knelt	يركع	sting	stung	stung	يلدغ
lay	laid	laid	يضع	strike	stuck	stuck	يضرب
lie	lied	lied	يكذب	sweep	swept	swept	يكنس
lead	led	led	يقود	spin	spun	spun	يدور / يغزل
learn	learnt	learnt	يتعلم	teach	taught	taught	يدرس
leave	left	left	يترك	think	thought	thought	يفكر
lend	lent	lent	يقرض	tell	told	told	يخبر
lose	lost	lost	يفقد	thrust	thrust	thrust	يدفع / يطعن
light	lit / lighted	lit / lighted	يضيء / ينير	think	thought	thought	يفكر
make	made	made	يصنع	understand	understood	understood	يفهم

mean	meant	meant	يعني / يقصد	unwind	unwound	unwound	يفك / يرخي
meet	met	met	يقابل	weep	wept	wept	يبكى
mislead	misled	misled	يضلل / يخدع	win	won	won	يفوز
pay	paid	paid	يدفع	withstand	withstood	withstood	يقاوم / يواجه
read	read	read	يقرأ	withhold	withheld	withheld	يحجب / يعرقل

Verbs with two changes أفعال تصريفاتها الثلاثة مختلفة

Present	Past simple	P.P	Meaning	Present	Past simple	P.P	Meaning
am, is,are	was/were	been	يكون	mistake	mistook	mistaken	يخطئ
awake	awoke	awoken	يستيقظ	overcome	overcame	overcome	يتغلب على
arise	arose	arisen	يظهر / ينشأ	overdo	overdid	overdone	يبالغ / يفرط
become	became	become	يصبح	overtake	overtook	overtaken	يجتاز/ يتجاوز
begin	began	begun	يبدأ	ride	rode	ridden	يركب
bite	bit	bitten	يعض	ring	rang	rung	يرن
blow	blew	blown	يهب	rise	rose	risen	يرتفع
break	broke	broken	يكسر	run	ran	run	يجرى
bear	bore	born	يحمل / يلد	say	said	said	يقول
beat	beat	beaten	يضرب	saw	sawed	sawn	ينشر
choose	chose	chosen	يختار	see	saw	seen	يرى
come	came	come	يأتى	sew	sewed	sewn	يخيط
do - does	did	done	يفعل	shake	shook	shaken	يهز
draw	drew	drawn	يرسم	shrink	shrank	shrunk	ينكمش
drink	drank	drunk	يشرب	shine	shone	shone	يتلألأ / يشرق
drive	drove	driven	يقود	sing	sang	sung	يغنى
draw	drew	drawn	يرسم	sink	sank	sunk	يغوص
eat	ate	eaten	يأكل	sow	sowed	sown	يبذر
fall	fell	fallen	يسقط	speak	spoke	spoken	يتحدث
fly	flew	flown	يطير	spin	span	spun	يغزل/ يدور / يلف
forget	forgot	forgotten	ينسى	steal	stole	stolen	يسرق
forgive	forgave	forgiven	يسامح	swim	swam	swum	يسبح
freeze	froze	frozen	يتجمد	take	took	taken	يأخذ
give	gave	given	يعطى	tear	tore	torn	يمزق
go	went	gone	يذهب	throw	threw	thrown	يرمى
grow	grew	grown	يزرع	wear	wore	worn	يرتدى
get	got	gotten/got	يحصل	write	wrote	written	يكتب
hide	hid	hidden	يختفى	withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn	ينسحب / يسحب
know	knew	known	يعرف	weave	wove	woven	ينسج / يحوك
lie	lay	lain	يرقد	اللهم علم ينتفع به			

Giants' Grammar

محتــوى الكتــاب

	Content	المحتوي
1	Parts of Speech	أجزاء الكلام
2	Sentence Form	تكوين الجملة
3	Question Form	تكوين السؤال
4	Present Tenses	أزمنة المضارع
5	Past Tenses	أزمنة الماضي
6	Future Tenses & forms	أزمنة و صيغ المستقبل
7	Passive	المبني للمجهول
8	Relative Clauses	ضمائر الوصل
9	Direct and Reported Speech	المباشر والغير مباشر
10	IF Conditional	حالات If
11	Wishing and regret	التمني والندم
12	Conjunctions	الروابط
13	Infinitive and Gerund	المصدر و ing
14	Modals & Deduction	الأفعال الناقصة واللستنتاج
15	Conjugation of Irregular Verbs	تصريفات اللافعال الغير منتظمة
16	General Exercises	تمارين عامة